

# Finance Bill

---

---

## EUROPEAN CONVENTION ON HUMAN RIGHTS

Mr Chancellor of the Exchequer has made the following statement under section 19(1)(a) of the Human Rights Act 1998:

In my view the provisions of the Finance Bill are compatible with the Convention rights.

# Finance Bill

---

---

## CONTENTS

### PART 1

#### PRINCIPAL RATES ETC

##### *Tax lock*

- 1 Income tax lock
- 2 VAT lock

##### *Personal allowance and basic rate limit for income tax*

- 3 Personal allowance and national minimum wage
- 4 Personal allowance and national minimum wage: Chancellor's duties
- 5 Personal allowance from 2016
- 6 Basic rate limit from 2016

##### *Corporation tax*

- 7 Rate of corporation tax for financial years 2017-2020

##### *Capital allowances*

- 8 Annual investment allowance

### PART 2

#### INHERITANCE TAX

##### *Rate bands*

- 9 Increased nil-rate band where home inherited by descendants
- 10 Rate bands for tax years 2018-19, 2019-20 and 2020-21

##### *Settlements*

- 11 Calculation of rate of inheritance tax on settled property
- 12 Exemption from ten-yearly charge for heritage property
- 13 Settlements with initial interest in possession

- 14 Distributions etc from property settled by will

*Interest*

- 15 Inheritance tax: interest

**PART 3**

BANKING

*Bank levy*

- 16 Bank levy rates for 2016 to 2021

*Banking companies*

- 17 Banking companies: surcharge  
18 Banking companies: expenses relating to compensation  
19 Banks established under Savings Bank (Scotland) Act 1819: loss allowance  
20 Definitions relating to banks

**PART 4**

INCOME TAX, CORPORATION TAX AND CAPITAL GAINS TAX

*Income tax*

- 21 Pensions: special lump sum death benefits charge  
22 Pensions: some lump sum death benefits taxed as pension income  
23 Pensions: annual allowance  
24 Relief for finance costs related to residential property businesses  
25 Enterprise investment scheme  
26 Venture capital trusts  
27 EIS, VCTs and EMI: meaning of “farming”  
28 Travel expenses of members of local authorities etc  
29 London Anniversary Games

*Corporation tax*

- 30 R&D expenditure credits: ineligible companies  
31 Loan relationships and derivative contracts  
32 Intangible fixed assets: goodwill etc  
33 Election of designated currency by UK resident investment company  
34 Group relief  
35 CFC charge: abolition of relief  
36 CFC charge: tax avoidance involving carried-forward losses

*Income tax and corporation tax*

- 37 Changes in trading stock not made in course of trade  
38 Valuation of trading stock on cessation  
39 Transfer of intangible assets not at arm’s length

*Income tax and capital gains tax*

- 40 Carried interest
- 41 Disguised investment management fees

**PART 5**

## EXCISE DUTIES AND OTHER TAXES

*Vehicle excise duty*

- 42 Vehicle excise duty

*Insurance premium tax*

- 43 Insurance premium tax: standard rate

*Aggregates levy*

- 44 Aggregates levy: restoration of exemptions

*Climate change levy*

- 45 CCL: removal of exemption for electricity from renewable sources

**PART 6**

## ADMINISTRATION AND ENFORCEMENT

- 46 International agreements to improve compliance: client notification
- 47 Enforcement by deduction from accounts
- 48 Rate of interest applicable to judgment debts etc in taxation matters

**PART 7**

## FINAL

- 49 Interpretation
- 50 Short title

- 
- Schedule 1 – Rate of tax charged under Chapter 3 of Part 3 IHTA 1984
  - Schedule 2 – Bank levy rates for 2016 to 2021
  - Schedule 3 – Banking companies: surcharge
    - Part 1 – Main provisions
    - Part 2 – Consequential amendments
    - Part 3 – Commencement
  - Schedule 4 – Pensions: annual allowance
    - Part 1 – Alignment of pension input periods with tax years
    - Part 2 – Annual allowance for, and carry-forward from, 2015-16
    - Part 3 – Calculation of pension input amounts for periods ending in 2015-16

- 
- Part 4 – Reduction of annual allowance for high-income individuals
  - Part 5 – Other amendments
  - Schedule 5 – Enterprise investment scheme
  - Schedule 6 – Venture capital trusts
  - Schedule 7 – Loan relationships and derivative contracts
    - Part 1 – Loan relationships: amendments of Parts 5 and 6 of CTA 2009
    - Part 2 – Derivative contracts: amendments of Part 7 of CTA 2009
    - Part 3 – Amendments of TCGA 1992 relating to loan relationships
    - Part 4 – Consequential amendments
    - Part 5 – Repeal of uncommenced repeal provisions
    - Part 6 – Commencement and transitional provisions
  - Schedule 8 – Enforcement by deduction from accounts
    - Part 1 – Scheme for enforcement by deduction from accounts
    - Part 2 – Miscellaneous amendments

A  
**B I L L**

TO

Grant certain duties, to alter other duties, and to amend the law relating to the National Debt and the Public Revenue, and to make further provision in connection with finance.

Most Gracious Sovereign

**W**E, Your Majesty's most dutiful and loyal subjects, the Commons of the United Kingdom in Parliament assembled, towards raising the necessary supplies to defray Your Majesty's public expenses, and making an addition to the public revenue, have freely and voluntarily resolved to give and to grant unto Your Majesty the several duties hereinafter mentioned; and do therefore most humbly beseech Your Majesty that it may be enacted, and be it enacted by the Queen's most Excellent Majesty, by and with the advice and consent of the Lords Spiritual and Temporal, and Commons, in this present Parliament assembled, and by the authority of the same, as follows:—

**PART 1**

PRINCIPAL RATES ETC

*Tax lock*

**1 Income tax lock**

- (1) For any tax year to which this section applies— 5
- (a) the basic rate of income tax shall not exceed 20%,
  - (b) the higher rate of income tax shall not exceed 40%, and
  - (c) the additional rate of income tax shall not exceed 45%.
- (2) This section applies to a tax year— 10
- (a) which begins after the day on which this Act is passed but before the date of the first parliamentary general election after that day, and

- (b) for which income tax is charged.

## 2 VAT lock

- (1) The rate of value added tax for the time being in force under section 2 of VATA 1994 (standard rate) shall not exceed 20% during the VAT lock period.
- (2) The rate of value added tax for the time being in force under section 29A of VATA 1994 (reduced rate) shall not exceed 5% during the VAT lock period. 5
- (3) No supply specified in Schedule 7A to VATA 1994 (charge at reduced rate) at the beginning of the VAT lock period may be removed from it under section 29A(3) of that Act during that period.
- (4) No goods, services or supply specified in Schedule 8 to VATA 1994 (zero-rating) at the beginning of the VAT lock period may be removed from it under section 30(4) of that Act during that period. 10
- (5) In this section the “VAT lock period” means the period beginning with the day on which this Act is passed and ending immediately before the date of the first parliamentary general election after that day. 15

### *Personal allowance and basic rate limit for income tax*

## 3 Personal allowance and national minimum wage

- (1) After section 57 of ITA 2007 insert—
- “57A Personal allowance linked to national minimum wage**
- (1) This section provides for increases in the amount specified in section 35(1) (personal allowance). 20
- (2) It applies in relation to a tax year if—
- (a) the adult national minimum wage at the start of the tax year is greater than it was at the start of the previous tax year, and
- (b) the amount specified in section 35(1) immediately before the start of the tax year is at least £12,500. 25
- (3) For the tax year, the personal allowance specified in section 35(1) is to be the yearly equivalent of the adult national minimum wage at the start of the tax year.
- (4) Subsections (1) to (3) do not require a change to be made in the amounts deductible or repayable under PAYE regulations during the period beginning on 6 April and ending on 17 May in the tax year. 30
- (5) Before the start of the tax year the Treasury must make an order replacing the amount specified in section 35(1) with the amount which, as a result of this section, is the personal allowance for the tax year. 35
- (6) For the purposes of this section, the “adult national minimum wage”, at any time, is the single hourly rate of the national minimum wage for a worker aged 21 years or over which is in force at that time.

- (7) For the purposes of this section, the yearly equivalent of the adult national minimum wage at any time is the amount equal to—

$$\text{NMW} \times 30 \times 52$$

where NMW is the adult national minimum wage at that time.”

- (2) In section 57 of ITA 2007 (indexation of allowances), at the end insert— 5  
“(8) This section ceases to have effect in relation to the amount specified in section 35(1) when that amount becomes (by virtue of this section or otherwise) an amount of £12,500 or more.”
- (3) In section 1014 of ITA 2007 (orders and regulations), in subsection (5)(b), after sub-paragraph (ii) insert— 10  
“(iia) section 57A (personal allowance linked to national minimum wage),”.

#### 4 Personal allowance and national minimum wage: Chancellor’s duties

- (1) This section applies where the personal allowance for income tax for the time being specified in section 35(1) of ITA 2007 is less than £12,500. 15
- (2) Before the Chancellor of the Exchequer announces a proposal to increase that allowance to an amount which is less than £12,500, he or she must consider the financial effect of the proposal on a person paid the adult national minimum wage.
- (3) If such a proposal is announced, the Chancellor of the Exchequer must make a statement as to what he or she considers that that financial effect would be. 20
- (4) In this section, “a person paid the adult national minimum wage” is a person who works for 30 hours a week for a year at the single hourly rate of the national minimum wage for a worker who is aged 21 years or over.
- (5) This section ceases to have effect when the allowance referred to in subsection (1) becomes an amount of £12,500 or more. 25

#### 5 Personal allowance from 2016

In section 5(1) of FA 2015 (personal allowance from 2016) —

- (a) in paragraph (a) (personal allowance for 2016-17), for “£10,800” substitute “£11,000”, and 30
- (b) in paragraph (b) (personal allowance for 2017-18), for “£11,000” substitute “£11,200”.

#### 6 Basic rate limit from 2016

In section 4(1) of FA 2015 (basic rate limit from 2016) —

- (a) in paragraph (a) (basic rate limit for 2016-17), for “£31,900” substitute “£32,000”, and 35
- (b) in paragraph (b) (basic rate limit for 2017-18), for “£32,300” substitute “£32,400”.

*Corporation tax***7 Rate of corporation tax for financial years 2017-2020**

- (1) For the financial years 2017, 2018 and 2019 the main rate of corporation tax is 19%.
- (2) For the financial year 2020 the main rate of corporation tax is 18%. 5

*Capital allowances***8 Annual investment allowance**

- (1) In section 51A of CAA 2001 (entitlement to annual investment allowance), for the amount specified in subsection (5) as the maximum allowance (which in the absence of this section would be £25,000 in relation to expenditure incurred on or after 1 January 2016) substitute “£200,000”. 10
- (2) The amendment made by subsection (1) has effect in relation to expenditure incurred on or after 1 January 2016.
- (3) Subsection (2) is subject to paragraphs 4 and 5 of Schedule 2 to FA 2014 (which relate to cases involving chargeable periods which begin before 1 January 2016 and end on or after that day). 15

**PART 2**

## INHERITANCE TAX

*Rate bands***9 Increased nil-rate band where home inherited by descendants 20**

- (1) IHTA 1984 is amended as follows.
- (2) In section 7(1) (rates at which inheritance tax charged on the value transferred by a chargeable transfer) after “Subject to subsections (2), (4) and (5) below and to” insert “section 8D and”.
- (3) In section 8A(2) (test for whether person has unused nil-rate band on death), in the definition of M (maximum amount transferable at 0%), after “were sufficient but” insert “that the maximum amount chargeable at nil per cent. under section 8D(2) is equal to the person’s residence nil-rate amount and”. 25
- (4) After section 8C insert –

**“8D Extra nil-rate band on death if interest in home goes to descendants etc 30**

- (1) Subsections (2) and (3) apply for the purpose of calculating the amount of the charge to tax under section 4 on a person’s death if the person dies on or after 6 April 2017.
- (2) If the person’s residence nil-rate amount is greater than nil, the portion of VT that does not exceed the person’s residence nil-rate amount is charged at the rate of 0%. 35

- (3) References in section 7(1) to the value transferred by the chargeable transfer under section 4 on the person’s death are to be read as references to the remainder (if any) of VT.
- (4) The person’s residence nil-rate amount is calculated in accordance with sections 8E to 8G. 5
- (5) For the purposes of those sections and this section—
- (a) the “residential enhancement” is—
    - (i) £100,000 for the tax year 2017-18,
    - (ii) £125,000 for the tax year 2018-19,
    - (iii) £150,000 for the tax year 2019-20, and 10
    - (iv) £175,000 for the tax year 2020-21 and subsequent tax years,but this is subject to subsections (6) and (7),
  - (b) the “taper threshold” is £2,000,000 for the tax year 2017-18 and subsequent tax years, but this is subject to subsections (6) and (7), 15
  - (c) TT is the taper threshold at the person’s death,
  - (d) E is the value of the person’s estate immediately before the person’s death,
  - (e) VT is the value transferred by the chargeable transfer under section 4 on the person’s death, 20
  - (f) the person’s “default allowance” is the total of—
    - (i) the residential enhancement at the person’s death, and
    - (ii) the person’s brought-forward allowance (see section 8G), and 25
  - (g) the person’s “adjusted allowance” is—
    - (i) the person’s default allowance, less
    - (ii) the amount given by—
$$\frac{E - TT}{2}$$
but is nil if that amount is greater than the person’s default allowance. 30
- (6) Subsection (7) applies if—
- (a) the consumer prices index for the month of September in any tax year (“the prior tax year”) is higher than it was for the previous September, and 35
  - (b) the prior tax year is the tax year 2020-21 or a later tax year.
- (7) Unless Parliament otherwise determines, the amount of each of—
- (a) the residential enhancement for the tax year following the prior tax year, and
  - (b) the taper threshold for that following tax year, 40
- is its amount for the prior tax year increased by the same percentage as the percentage increase in the index and, if the result is not a multiple of £1,000, rounded up to the nearest amount which is such a multiple.
- (8) The Treasury must before 6 April 2021 and each subsequent 6 April make an order specifying the amounts that in accordance with subsections (6) and (7) are the residential enhancement and taper 45

threshold for the tax year beginning on that date; and any such order is to be made by statutory instrument.

- (9) In this section –
- “tax year” means a year beginning on 6 April and ending on the following 5 April, and 5
  - “the tax year 2017-18” means the tax year beginning on 6 April 2017 (and any corresponding expression in which two years are similarly mentioned is to be read in the same way).

#### **8E Residence nil-rate amount: interest in home goes to descendants etc**

- (1) Subsections (2) to (7) apply if – 10
- (a) the person’s estate immediately before the person’s death includes a qualifying residential interest, and
  - (b) N% of the interest is closely inherited, where N is a number –
    - (i) greater than 0, and
    - (ii) less than or equal to 100, 15
 and in those subsections “NV/100” means N% of so much (if any) of the value transferred by the transfer of value under section 4 as is attributable to the interest.
- (2) Where – 20
- (a) E is less than or equal to TT, and
  - (b) NV/100 is less than the person’s default allowance,
- the person’s residence nil-rate amount is equal to NV/100 and an amount, equal to the difference between NV/100 and the person’s default allowance, is available for carry-forward.
- (3) Where – 25
- (a) E is less than or equal to TT, and
  - (b) NV/100 is greater than or equal to the person’s default allowance,
- the person’s residence nil-rate amount is equal to the person’s default allowance (and no amount is available for carry-forward). 30
- (4) Where –
- (a) E is greater than TT, and
  - (b) NV/100 is less than the person’s adjusted allowance,
- the person’s residence nil-rate amount is equal to NV/100 and an amount, equal to the difference between NV/100 and the person’s adjusted allowance, is available for carry-forward. 35
- (5) Where –
- (a) E is greater than TT, and
  - (b) NV/100 is greater than or equal to the person’s adjusted allowance, 40
- the person’s residence nil-rate amount is equal to the person’s adjusted allowance (and no amount is available for carry-forward).
- (6) Subsections (2) to (5) have effect subject to subsection (7).
- (7) Where the person’s residence nil-rate amount as calculated under subsections (2) to (5) without applying this subsection is greater than VT – 45

- (a) subsections (2) to (5) have effect as if each reference in them to NV/100 were a reference to VT,
  - (b) each of subsections (3) and (5) has effect as if it provided that the person’s residence nil-rate amount were equal to VT (rather than the person’s default allowance or, as the case may be, the person’s adjusted allowance). 5
- (8) See also –
  - section 8H (meaning of “qualifying residential interest”),
  - section 8J (meaning of “inherit”),
  - section 8K (meaning of “closely inherited”), and 10
  - section 8M (cases involving conditional exemption).
- 8F Residence nil-rate amount: no interest in home goes to descendants etc**
- (1) Subsections (2) and (3) apply if the person’s estate immediately before the person’s death –
  - (a) does not include a qualifying residential interest, or 15
  - (b) includes a qualifying residential interest but none of the interest is closely inherited.
- (2) The person’s residence nil-rate amount is nil.
- (3) An amount –
  - (a) equal to the person’s default allowance, or 20
  - (b) if E is greater than TT, equal to the person’s adjusted allowance, is available for carry-forward.
- (4) See also –
  - section 8H (meaning of “qualifying residential interest”),
  - section 8J (meaning of “inherit”), 25
  - section 8K (meaning of “closely inherited”), and
  - section 8M (cases involving conditional exemption).
- 8G Meaning of “brought-forward allowance”**
- (1) This section is about the amount of the brought-forward allowance (see section 8D(5)(f)) for a person (“P”) who dies on or after 6 April 2017. 30
- (2) In this section “related person” means a person other than P where –
  - (a) the other person dies before P, and
  - (b) immediately before the other person dies, P is the other person’s spouse or civil partner.
- (3) P’s brought-forward allowance is calculated as follows – 35
  - (a) identify each amount available for carry-forward from the death of a related person (see sections 8E and 8F, and subsections (4) and (5)),
  - (b) express each such amount as a percentage of the residential enhancement at the death of the related person concerned, 40
  - (c) calculate the percentage that is the total of those percentages, and
  - (d) the amount that is that total percentage of the residential enhancement at P’s death is P’s brought-forward allowance or, if that total percentage is greater than 100%, P’s brought- 45

forward allowance is the amount of the residential enhancement at P's death,  
but P's brought-forward allowance is nil if no claim for it is made under section 8L.

- (4) Where the death of a related person occurs before 6 April 2017 – 5
- (a) an amount equal to £100,000 is treated for the purposes of subsection (3) as being the amount available for carry-forward from the related person's death, but this is subject to subsection (5), and
- (b) the residential enhancement at the related person's death is treated for those purposes as being £100,000. 10
- (5) If the value ("RPE") of the related person's estate immediately before the related person's death is greater than £2,000,000, the amount treated under subsection (4)(a) as available for carry-forward is reduced (but not below nil) by – 15
- $$\frac{\text{RPE} - \text{£}2,000,000}{2}$$

#### 8H Meaning of "qualifying residential interest"

- (1) This section applies for the purposes of sections 8E and 8F.
- (2) In this section "residential property interest", in relation to a person, means an interest in a dwelling-house which has been the person's residence at a time when the person's estate included that, or any other, interest in the dwelling-house. 20
- (3) Where a person's estate immediately before the person's death includes residential property interests in just one dwelling-house, the person's interests in that dwelling-house are a qualifying residential interest in relation to the person. 25
- (4) Where –
- (a) a person's estate immediately before the person's death includes residential property interests in each of two or more dwelling-houses, and 30
- (b) the person's personal representatives nominate one (and only one) of those dwelling-houses,  
the person's interests in the nominated dwelling-house are a qualifying residential interest in relation to the person.
- (5) A reference in this section to a dwelling-house – 35
- (a) includes any land occupied and enjoyed with it as its garden or grounds, but
- (b) does not include, in the case of any particular person, any trees or underwood in relation to which an election is made under section 125 as it applies in relation to that person's death. 40
- (6) If at any time when a person's estate includes an interest in a dwelling-house, the person –
- (a) resides in living accommodation which for the person is job-related, and
- (b) intends in due course to occupy the dwelling-house as the person's residence, 45

this section applies as if the dwelling-house were at that time occupied by the person as a residence.

- (7) Section 222(8A) to (8D) of the 1992 Act (meaning of “job-related”), but not section 222(9) of that Act, apply for the purposes of subsection (6).

**8J Meaning of “inherited”** 5

- (1) This section explains for the purposes of sections 8E and 8F whether a person (“B”) inherits, from a person who has died (“D”), property which forms part of D’s estate immediately before D’s death.

- (2) B inherits the property if there is a disposition of it (whether effected by will, under the law relating to intestacy or otherwise) to B. 10

- (3) Subsection (2) does not apply if under the disposition the property becomes comprised in a settlement, but in that case B inherits the property if—

- (a) under the disposition B becomes beneficially entitled to an interest in possession in the property, and that interest in possession is an immediate post-death interest or a disabled person’s interest, or 15

- (b) under the disposition the property becomes settled property—  
(i) to which section 71A or 71D applies, and  
(ii) held on trusts for the benefit of B. 20

- (4) Where the property forms part of D’s estate immediately before D’s death as a result of the operation of section 102(3) of the Finance Act 1986 (gifts with reservation) in relation to a disposal of the property made by D by way of gift, B inherits the property if B is the person to whom the disposal was made. 25

**8K Meaning of “closely inherited”**

- (1) In relation to a person’s death, something is “closely inherited” for the purposes of sections 8E and 8F if it is inherited for those purposes (see section 8J) by a lineal descendant of the person.

- (2) The rules in subsections (3) to (8) apply for the interpretation of subsection (1). 30

- (3) A person who is at any time a step-child of another person is to be treated, at that and all subsequent times, as if the person was that other person’s child.

- (4) Any rule of law, so far as it requires an adopted person to be treated as not being the child of a natural parent of the person, is to be disregarded (but this is without prejudice to any rule of law requiring an adopted person to be treated as the child of an adopter of the person). 35

- (5) A person who is at any time fostered by a foster parent is to be treated, at that and all subsequent times, as if the person was the foster parent’s child. 40

- (6) Where—

- (a) an individual (“G”) is appointed (or is treated by law as having been appointed) under section 5 of the Children Act 1989, or under corresponding law having effect in Scotland or Northern 45

- Ireland or any country or territory outside the United Kingdom, as guardian (however styled) of another person, and
- (b) the appointment takes effect at a time when the other person (“C”) is under the age of 18 years,
- C is to be treated, at all times after the appointment takes effect, as if C was G’s child. 5
- (7) Where –
- (a) an individual (“SG”) is appointed as a special guardian (however styled) of another person (“C”) by an order of a court – 10
- (i) that is a special guardianship order as defined by section 14A of the Children Act 1989, or
- (ii) that is a corresponding order under legislation having effect in Scotland or Northern Ireland or any country or territory outside the United Kingdom, and 15
- (b) the appointment takes effect at a time when C is under the age of 18 years,
- C is to be treated, at all times after the appointment takes effect, as if C was SG’s child.
- (8) In particular, where under any of subsections (3) to (7) one person is to be treated at any time as the child of another person, that first person’s lineal descendants (even if born before that time) are accordingly to be treated at that time (and all subsequent times) as lineal descendants of that other person. 20
- (9) In subsection (4) “adopted person” means – 25
- (a) an adopted person within the meaning of Chapter 4 of Part 1 of the Adoption and Children Act 2002, or
- (b) a person who would be an adopted person within the meaning of that Chapter if, in section 66(1)(e) of that Act and section 38(1)(e) of the Adoption Act 1976, the reference to the law of England and Wales were a reference to the law of any part of the United Kingdom. 30
- (10) In subsection (5) “foster parent” means –
- (a) someone who is approved as a local authority foster parent in accordance with regulations made by virtue of paragraph 12F of Schedule 2 to the Children Act 1989, 35
- (b) a foster parent with whom the person is placed by a voluntary organisation under section 59(1)(a) that Act,
- (c) someone who looks after the person in circumstances in which the person is a privately fostered child as defined by section 66 of that Act, or 40
- (d) someone who, under legislation having effect in Scotland or Northern Ireland or any country or territory outside the United Kingdom, is a foster parent corresponding to a foster parent within paragraph (a) or (b). 45

## 8L Claims for brought-forward allowance

- (1) A claim for brought-forward allowance for a person (see section 8G) may be made –

- (a) by the person’s personal representatives within the permitted period, or
  - (b) (if no claim is so made) by any other person liable to the tax chargeable on the person’s death within such later period as an officer of Revenue and Customs may in the particular case allow. 5
- (2) In subsection (1)(a) “the permitted period” means –
  - (a) the period of 2 years from the end of the month in which the person dies or (if it ends later) the period of 3 months beginning with the date on which the personal representatives first act as such, or 10
  - (b) such longer period as an officer of Revenue and Customs may in the particular case allow.
- (3) A claim under subsection (1) made within either of the periods mentioned in subsection (2)(a) may be withdrawn no later than one month after the end of the period concerned. 15
- (4) Subsection (5) applies if –
  - (a) no claim under this section has been made for brought-forward allowance for a person (“P”),
  - (b) the amount of the charge to tax under section 4 on the death of another person (“A”) would be different if a claim under subsection (1) had been made for brought-forward allowance for P, and 20
  - (c) the amount of the charge to tax under section 4 on the death of P, and the amount of the charge to tax under section 4 on the death of any person who is neither P nor A, would not have been different if a claim under subsection (1) had been made for brought-forward allowance for P. 25
- (5) A claim for brought-forward allowance for P may be made –
  - (a) by A’s personal representatives within the allowed period, or 30
  - (b) (if no claim is so made) by any other person liable to the tax chargeable on A’s death within such later period as an officer of Revenue and Customs may in the particular case allow.
- (6) In subsection (5)(a) “the allowed period” means –
  - (a) the period of 2 years from the end of the month in which A dies or (if it ends later) the period of 3 months beginning with the date on which the personal representatives first act as such, or 35
  - (b) such longer period as an officer of Revenue and Customs may in the particular case allow.
- (7) A claim under subsection (5) made within either of the periods mentioned in subsection (6)(a) may be withdrawn no later than one month after the end of the period concerned. 40

**8M Residence nil-rate amount: cases involving conditional exemption**

- (1) This section applies where –
  - (a) the estate of a person (“D”) immediately before D’s death includes a qualifying residential interest, 45
  - (b) D dies on or after 6 April 2017, and

- (c) some or all of the transfer of value under section 4 on D’s death is a conditionally exempt transfer of property consisting of, or including, some or all of the qualifying residential interest.
- (2) For the purposes of sections 8E and 8F, but subject to subsection (3), the exempt percentage of the qualifying residential interest is treated as being not closely inherited; and for this purpose “the exempt percentage” is given by – 5
- $$\frac{X}{\text{QRI}} \times 100$$
- where –
- X is the attributable portion of the value transferred by the conditionally exempt transfer, 10
- QRI is the attributable portion of the value transferred by the transfer under section 4, and
- “the attributable portion” means the portion (which may be the whole) attributable to the qualifying residential interest. 15
- (3) For the purposes of calculating tax chargeable under section 32 or 32A by reference to a chargeable event related to the qualifying residential interest where D is the relevant person for the purposes of section 33 –
- (a) in subsection (2), X is calculated as if the property forming the subject-matter of the conditionally exempt transfer had not included the property on which the tax is chargeable, 20
- (b) section 33 has effect as if for subsection (1)(b)(ii) there were substituted –
- “(ii) if the relevant person is dead, the rate or rates that would have applied to that amount in accordance with section 8D(2) and (3) above and the appropriate provision of section 7 above if –
- (a) that amount had been added to the value transferred on the relevant person’s death, and 30
- (b) the unrelieved portion of that amount had formed the highest part of that value.”, and
- (c) for the purposes of that substituted section 33(1)(b)(ii) “the unrelieved portion” of the amount on which tax is chargeable is that amount itself less the amount (if any) by which – 35
- (i) D’s residence nil-rate amount for the purposes of the particular calculation under section 33, exceeds
- (ii) D’s residence nil-rate amount for the purposes of the charge to tax under section 4 on D’s death. 40
- (4) The following provisions of this section apply if immediately before D’s death there is a person (“P”) who is D’s spouse or civil partner.
- (5) For the purposes of calculating tax chargeable under section 32 or 32A by reference to a chargeable event related to the qualifying residential interest which occurs after P’s death, the amount that would otherwise be D’s residence nil-rate amount for those purposes is reduced by the amount (if any) by which P’s residence nil-rate amount, or the residence nil-rate amount of any person who dies after P but before the 45

chargeable event occurs, was increased by reason of an amount being available for carry-forward from D’s death.

- (6) Where tax is chargeable under section 32 or 32A by reference to a chargeable event related to the qualifying residential interest which occurs before P’s death, section 8G(3) has effect for the purpose of calculating P’s brought-forward allowance as if – 5

- (a) before the “and” at the end of paragraph (c) there were inserted –

“(ca) reduce that total (but not below nil) by deducting from it the recapture percentage,” 10

- (b) in paragraph (d), before “total”, in both places, there were inserted “reduced”, and

- (c) the reference to the recapture percentage were to the percentage given by –

$$\frac{TA}{REE} \times 100 \quad 15$$

where –

REE is the residential enhancement at the time of the chargeable event, and

TA is the amount on which tax is chargeable under section 32 or 32A. 20

- (7) If subsection (6) has applied by reason of a previous event or events related to the qualifying residential interest, the reference in subsection (6)(c) to the fraction –

$$\frac{TA}{REE}$$

is to the aggregate of that fraction in respect of the current event and the previous event (or each of the previous events).” 25

## 10 Rate bands for tax years 2018-19, 2019-20 and 2020-21

Section 8 of IHTA 1984 (indexation) does not have effect by virtue of any difference between –

- (a) the consumer prices index for the month of September in 2017, 2018 or 2019, and 30  
(b) that index for the previous September.

### *Settlements*

## 11 Calculation of rate of inheritance tax on settled property

Schedule 1 contains provision about calculating the rate at which inheritance tax is charged under Chapter 3 of Part 3 of IHTA 1984. 35

## 12 Exemption from ten-yearly charge for heritage property

- (1) Section 79 of IHTA 1984 (exemption from ten-yearly charge) is amended as follows.

- (2) In subsection (3) –
- (a) for “then, if” substitute “subsection (3A) below applies if”,
  - (b) in paragraph (a), for “has, on a claim made for the purpose, been” substitute “is, on a claim made for the purpose,”,
  - (c) after that paragraph insert – 5
    - “(aa) that claim is made during the period beginning with the date of a ten-year anniversary of the settlement (“the relevant ten-year anniversary”) and ending –
      - (i) two years after that date, or
      - (ii) on such later date as the Board may allow,”
  - (d) in paragraph (b) – 10
    - (i) for “that section has been given” substitute “section 31 is given”, and
    - (ii) for “have been given” substitute “are given”, and
  - (e) omit the words from “section 64” to the end. 15
- (3) After that subsection insert –
- “(3A) Tax is not chargeable under section 64 above in relation to the property by reference to the relevant ten-year anniversary concerned or any subsequent ten-year anniversaries; but on the first occurrence of an event which, if there had been a conditionally exempt transfer of the property immediately before that relevant ten-year anniversary, would be a chargeable event with respect to the property – 20
- (a) there is a charge to tax under this subsection, and
  - (b) on any ten-year anniversary falling after that event, tax is chargeable under section 64 above in relation to the property.” 25
- (4) In subsection (4), for the words from “subsection (3)” to “mentioned” substitute “subsection (3A) above in respect of property if, after the occasion mentioned in subsection (3) above and before the occurrence mentioned in subsection (3A)”.
- (5) In subsections (5), (5A), (6), (8)(a) and (9A)(a) for “subsection (3)” substitute “subsection (3A)”. 30
- (6) In subsection (7A), in paragraph (c), for the words from “day” to “section” substitute “relevant ten-year anniversary”.
- (7) In subsection (8) –
- (a) in paragraph (a), for the words from “on the first” to the end substitute “by reference to the relevant ten-year anniversary of the settlement”, and 35
  - (b) in paragraph (c), omit “, and the claim was made and the undertaking was given,”.
- (8) Accordingly, in that Act – 40
- (a) in section 207 (liability: conditional exemption), in subsection (3), for “section 79(3)” substitute “section 79(3A)”,
  - (b) in section 233 (interest on unpaid tax), in subsection (1)(c), for “79(3)” substitute “79(3A)”,
  - (c) in section 237 (imposition of charge), in subsection (3B)(a), for “or 79(3)” substitute “or 79(3A)”, and 45

- (d) in Schedule 4 (maintenance funds for historic buildings), in paragraph 3(2)(c), for “or 79(3)” substitute “or 79(3A)”.
- (9) The amendments made by this section have effect in relation to occasions on which tax would (ignoring the effect of the amendments) fall to be charged under section 64 of IHTA 1984 on or after the day on which this Act is passed. 5

### 13 Settlements with initial interest in possession

- (1) In section 80 of IHTA 1984 (initial interest of settlor or spouse or civil partner), for “an interest in possession”, in each place it appears, substitute “a qualifying interest in possession”.
- (2) The amendments made by this section come into force on the day after the day on which this Act is passed subject to the saving provision in subsections (3) to (7). 10
- (3) Subsections (4) to (7) apply where –
- (a) the occasion first referred to in subsection (1) of section 80 of IHTA 1984 occurred before 22 March 2006, 15
  - (b) on that occasion the settlor, or the settlor’s spouse or civil partner, became beneficially entitled to an interest in possession in property which, as a result of that subsection, was treated as not becoming comprised in a settlement for the purposes of Chapter 3 of Part 3 of IHTA 1984 on that occasion, and 20
  - (c) at all times in the relevant period that property, or some particular part of it, has been property in which the settlor, or the settlor’s spouse or civil partner, has been beneficially entitled to an interest in possession, and in subsections (4) to (7) “the protected property” means that property or, as the case may be, that particular part of it. 25
- (4) The amendments made by subsection (1) do not have effect in relation to any particular part of the protected property for so long as the subsisting interest in possession continues to subsist in that part (but see subsections (5) and (6) for what happens afterwards).
- (5) As from immediately before the time when the subsisting interest in possession comes to an end so far as subsisting in any particular part of the protected property (whether or not it also comes to an end at the same time so far as subsisting in some or all of the rest of the protected property), section 80(1) of IHTA 1984 has effect in relation to that part as if the second appearance of “an interest in possession” were “a qualifying interest in possession”. 30 35
- (6) If (ignoring this subsection), subsection (5) would have the consequence that a particular part of the protected property is treated as becoming comprised in a separate settlement at a time earlier than the time at which the subsisting interest in possession comes to an end so far as subsisting in that part, that part is to be treated as becoming comprised in a separate settlement at that later time. 40
- (7) In this section –
- (a) “the relevant period” means the period beginning with the occasion first mentioned in section 80(1) of IHTA 1984 and ending with the day on which this Act is passed, 45
  - (b) “qualifying interest in possession” has the same meaning as in section 80(1) of IHTA 1984,

- (c) “subsisting interest in possession”, in relation to a part of the protected property, means the interest in possession which subsisted in that part immediately before the end of the relevant period, and
- (d) the reference in subsection (3)(c) to the spouse or civil partner of a settlor includes a reference to the widow or widower or surviving civil partner of the settlor. 5

#### 14 Distributions etc from property settled by will

- (1) In section 144 of IHTA 1984 (distributions etc from property settled by will), in subsection (1)(b), after “section” insert “65(4),”.
- (2) The amendment made by this section has effect in cases where the testator’s death occurs on or after 10 December 2014. 10

#### *Interest*

#### 15 Inheritance tax: interest

- (1) In section 107 of FA 1986 (changes in financial institutions: interest) –
  - (a) in subsection (4), for the words from “section 234(4)” to “above)” substitute “paragraph 7(8) of Schedule 53 to the Finance Act 2009 (late payment interest: inheritance tax payable by instalments)”;
  - (b) in subsection (5), for the words from “amend” to “section 234(3)(c)” substitute “set out one or more descriptions of company for the purposes of paragraph 7(7) of Schedule 53 to the Finance Act 2009”. 15
- (2) In Schedule 53 to FA 2009 (special provision: late payment interest start date) –
  - (a) in paragraph 7 (inheritance tax payable by instalments) for sub-paragraph (7) substitute –
    - “(7) A company falls within this sub-paragraph if –
      - (a) its business is carried on in the United Kingdom and is –
        - (i) wholly that of a market maker, or
        - (ii) that of a discount house, or
      - (b) it is of a description set out in regulations under section 107(5) of FA 1986.”; 25
    - (b) in paragraph 9 (certain other amounts of inheritance tax), for “date of the testator’s death” substitute “end of the month in which the testator died”. 30
  - (3) The amendments made by this section come into force on such day or days as the Treasury may by regulations made by statutory instrument appoint. 35
  - (4) Regulations under subsection (3) may –
    - (a) appoint different days for different purposes;
    - (b) make transitional or saving provision.

**PART 3**

**BANKING**

*Bank levy*

**16 Bank levy rates for 2016 to 2021**

Schedule 2 contains provision for a reduction in bank levy rates in 2016 and further reductions each year from 2017 to 2021. 5

*Banking companies*

**17 Banking companies: surcharge**

Schedule 3 contains provision for, and in connection with, a surcharge on banking companies. 10

**18 Banking companies: expenses relating to compensation**

(1) In CTA 2009, after section 133 insert –

*“Banking companies*

**133A Compensation payments: restriction of deductions**

(1) In calculating the profits of a trade carried on by a company (“company A”) no deduction is allowed for expenses incurred by the company if and so far as – 15

- (a) the expenses are in respect of amounts of relevant compensation (see subsection (3)), and
- (b) the disclosure condition is met in relation to the expenses (see section 133C). 20

(2) Subsection (1) does not apply to expenses which are excluded by section 133D.

(3) In relation to company A, “relevant compensation” means compensation which is paid or payable – 25

- (a) to or for the benefit of a customer of company A in respect of relevant conduct (see subsection (6)) of company A, or
- (b) to or for the benefit of a customer of a qualifying company in respect of relevant conduct of that qualifying company (but see subsection (4)). 30

(4) Compensation paid or payable as mentioned in subsection (3)(b) is not relevant compensation so far as it is paid or payable under arrangements entered into between company A and the qualifying company on arm’s length terms.

(5) “Qualifying company”, in relation to company A, means a company which is associated with company A (see section 133L) at the time when the expenses in question are recognised for accounting purposes. 35

- (6) For the purposes of this section conduct of a company is “relevant conduct” if the conduct occurs –
- (a) on or after 29 April 1988, and
  - (b) at a time when the company is a banking company (see section 133E). 5
- (7) For the purposes of subsection (1) it does not matter whether the compensation is paid, or to be paid, by company A or another person.
- (8) In this section –
- “compensation”, “payment” and references to compensation “paid or payable” in respect of relevant conduct of a company, are to be read in accordance with section 133K; 10
  - “conduct” includes any act or omission;
  - “customer” has the meaning given by section 133J.
- 133B Companies affected by section 133A: amounts treated as received**
- (1) This section applies where a company incurs in an accounting period expenses which would, but for section 133A, be deductible in calculating the profits of a trade carried on by that company. 15
  - (2) An amount equal to 10% of the relevant sum is to be brought into account as a receipt in calculating the profits of the trade.
  - (3) The amount is treated as arising at the end of the accounting period. 20
  - (4) In this section “the relevant sum” means the total amount of the expenses which as a result of section 133A are not deductible in calculating the profits of the trade for the accounting period.
- 133C The disclosure condition**
- (1) In relation to expenses incurred by a company (“company A”) in respect of amounts of relevant compensation, the “disclosure condition” is met if – 25
    - (a) a relevant document indicates that the company –
      - (i) is or has been, or
      - (ii) will or may become, 30
 liable to pay compensation in respect of a particular matter and the relevant compensation can reasonably be regarded as relating to that matter, or
    - (b) a relevant document refers to disciplinary action taken or to be taken by a regulator in respect of a particular matter and the relevant compensation can reasonably be regarded as relating to that matter. 35
  - (2) For the purposes of subsection (1)(a) it does not matter whether the indication is express or implicit (or how it is expressed or conveyed) provided that it is reasonably clear from the relevant document that the company is or has been, or will or may become, liable to pay compensation in respect of the matter concerned. 40
  - (3) In this section “a relevant document” means –
    - (a) relevant accounts,
    - (b) a relevant statutory report, or 45
    - (c) a relevant listing disclosure.

- 
- (4) For the purposes of this section the following are “relevant accounts” in relation to expenses incurred by company A –
- (a) company A’s statutory accounts for a relevant period, and
  - (b) relevant consolidated accounts for a relevant period.
- (5) For the purposes of this section, any of the following is a “relevant statutory report” in relation to company A if the report in question is prepared for a relevant period –
- (a) any published report prepared by the directors of the company for the purposes of any provision of the legislation under which company A is registered or, as the case may be, established;
  - (b) any published consolidated report prepared for such purposes, if the company is included in the consolidation.
- (6) In this section “relevant listing disclosure” means a disclosure required –
- (a) by rules under section 73A of FISMA 2000, or
  - (b) by virtue of a requirement imposed by or under a corresponding provision of the law of a territory outside the United Kingdom,
- if the disclosure is made not later than the end of the period of account in which the expenses are recognised for accounting purposes.
- (7) In this section “relevant period”, in relation to expenses incurred by company A, means –
- (a) the period of account in which the expenses are recognised for accounting purposes, or
  - (b) any period which ends not later than the end of that period.
- (8) In this section, in relation to a company –
- “relevant compensation” has the meaning given by section 133A(3);
  - “statutory accounts” means accounts prepared for the purposes of any provision of the legislation under which the company is registered or, as the case may be, established;
  - “relevant consolidated accounts” means consolidated accounts prepared for any such purposes, if the company is included in the consolidation.
- 133D Excluded expenses**
- (1) Expenses in respect of relevant compensation are excluded by this section if the compensation is in respect of –
- (a) an administrative error,
  - (b) the failure of a computer or electronic system, or
  - (c) loss or damage which is wholly or mainly attributable to an unconnected third party.
- (2) In subsection (1) “third party” means a person who is neither the company mentioned in section 133A(1) nor (if different) the company in respect of whose conduct the compensation is paid or payable (see section 133A(3)(b)).
- (3) For the purposes of this section a third party (“TP”) is an “unconnected third party” unless –

- 
- (a) TP was, at the time of the relevant actions, connected with the company mentioned in section 133A(1) or (if different) the company in respect of whose conduct the compensation is paid or payable, or
- (b) in taking one or more of the relevant actions, TP was acting under arrangements with the company mentioned in paragraph (a) or (as the case may be) either of the companies mentioned in paragraph (a). 5
- (4) In this section “the relevant actions” means the actions as a result of which the loss or damage is wholly or mainly attributable to TP (and references to actions or the taking of actions include failures to act). 10
- (5) Section 1122 of CTA 2010 (meaning of “connected persons”) applies for the purposes of this section, but subject to the following modification.
- (6) Section 1122 has effect as if after subsection (8) there were inserted –
- “(9) A person (“A”) is connected with any person who is an employee of A or by whom A is employed. 15
- (10) For the purposes of this section any director or other officer of a company is to be treated as employed by that company.”
- 133E Meaning of “banking company”**
- (1) For the purposes of sections 133A, a company is a “banking company” – 20
- (a) at a time when it meets conditions A to D,
- (b) at a time when it meets condition A and is a member of a partnership which meets conditions B to D, or
- (c) if it is a building society. 25
- In subsections (2) to (6), “the relevant entity” means the company or partnership.
- (2) Condition A is that the company is not an excluded company (see section 133F).
- (3) Condition B – 30
- (a) in relation to any time on or after 1 December 2001, is that the relevant entity is an authorised person for the purposes of FISMA 2000 (see section 31 of that Act);
- (b) in relation to any time before that date, is that the relevant entity – 35
- (i) was at that time an authorised person under Chapter 3 of Part 1 of the Financial Services Act 1986 (persons authorised to carry on investment business),
- (ii) was authorised under the Banking Act 1987, or
- (iii) was entitled by virtue of the Banking Co-ordination (Second Council Directive) Regulations 1992 (S.I. 1992/3218) to accept deposits (within the meaning of the Banking Act 1987) in the United Kingdom. 40
- (4) Condition C is that –
- (a) the relevant entity’s activities include the relevant regulated activity described in the provision mentioned in section 133G(1)(a), or 45

- (b) the relevant entity is an investment bank (see section 133H) whose activities consist wholly or mainly of any of the relevant regulated activities described in the provisions mentioned in section 133G(1)(b) to (f).
- (5) Condition D is that the relevant entity carries on that relevant regulated activity, or those relevant regulated activities, wholly or mainly in the course of trade. 5
- (6) Where the relevant entity carries on activities outside the United Kingdom, Condition B is met—
- (a) in relation to any time on or after 1 December 2001, if the relevant entity would be required to be an authorised person for the purposes of FISMA 2000 (see section 31 of that Act) in order to carry on any of those activities in the United Kingdom at that time; 10
- (b) in relation to any time before that date, if in order to carry on those activities in the United Kingdom at that time the relevant entity— 15
- (i) would have been required to be an authorised person under Chapter 3 of Part 1 of the Financial Services Act 1986 (persons authorised to carry on investment business), or 20
- (ii) would have been required either to be authorised under the Banking Act 1987 or to be entitled by virtue of the Banking Co-ordination (Second Council Directive) Regulations 1992 (S.I. 1992/3218) to accept deposits (within the meaning of the Banking Act 1987) in the United Kingdom. 25
- (7) In this section “partnership” includes—
- (a) a limited liability partnership, and
- (b) an entity established under the law of a territory outside the United Kingdom of a similar character to a partnership, and “member”, in relation to a partnership, is to be read accordingly. 30
- (8) For the meaning of “relevant regulated activity”, see section 133G.
- 133F “Excluded company”**
- (1) This section gives the meaning of “excluded company” for the purposes of section 133E. 35
- (2) A company is an “excluded company” at any time (in an accounting period) when the company is—
- (a) an insurance company or an insurance special purpose vehicle;
- (b) a company which is a member of a group and does not carry on any relevant regulated activities otherwise than on behalf of an insurance company or an insurance special purpose vehicle which is a member of the group; 40
- (c) a company which does not carry on any relevant regulated activities otherwise than as the manager of a pension scheme; 45
- (d) an investment trust;
- (e) a company which does not carry on any relevant regulated activities other than asset management activities;

- 
- (f) an exempt commodities firm;
  - (g) a company which does not carry on any relevant regulated activities otherwise than for the purpose of trading in commodities or commodity derivatives;
  - (h) a company which does not carry on any relevant regulated activities otherwise than for the purpose of dealing in contracts for differences – 5
    - (i) as principal with persons all or all but an insignificant proportion of whom are retail clients, or
    - (ii) with any other person to enable the company or that other person to deal in contracts for differences as principal with persons all or all but an insignificant proportion of whom are retail clients; 10
  - (i) a friendly society;
  - (j) a society registered as a credit union under the Co-operative and Community Benefit Societies Act 2014 or the Credit Unions (Northern Ireland) Order 1985 (S.I. 1985/1205 (N.I. 12)); 15
  - (k) a building society.
- (3) In this section “asset management activities” means activities which consist (or, if they were carried on in the United Kingdom, would consist) of any or all of the following – 20
- (a) acting as the operator of a collective investment scheme (see subsection (5)),
  - (b) managing investments on a discretionary basis for clients none of which is a linked entity (see subsection (6)), and 25
  - (c) acting as an authorised corporate director.
- (4) In subsection (2)(f) “exempt commodities firm” means –
- (a) in relation to a time on or after 1 January 2014, an exempt IFPRU commodities firm, as defined by the FCA Handbook at that time, 30
  - (b) in relation to a time on or after 1 April 2013 but before 1 January 2014, an exempt BIPRU commodities firm, as defined by the PRA Handbook at that time,
  - (c) in relation to a time on or after 1 January 2007 but before 1 April 2013, an exempt BIPRU commodities firm, as defined by the Handbook of the Financial Services Authority at that time, and 35
  - (d) in relation to a time before 1 January 2007, an exempt BIPRU commodities firm as defined by the Handbook of the Financial Services Authority as in force on 1 January 2007.
- (5) In subsection (3)(a) “operator of a collective investment scheme” – 40
- (a) in relation to times on and after 25 February 2001, has the same meaning as in Part 17 of FISMA 2000 (see sections 235 and 237 of that Act);
  - (b) in relation to times before that date, has the same meaning as in the Financial Services Act 1986. 45
- (6) In subsection (3)(b) “linked entity”, in relation to a company (“C”), means –
- (a) a member of the same group as C;

- (b) a company in which a company which is a member of the same group as C has a major interest, or
  - (c) a partnership the members of which include an entity –
    - (i) which is a member of the same group as C, and
    - (ii) whose share of the profits or losses of a trade carried on by the partnership for an accounting period of the partnership any part of which falls within the accounting period mentioned in the opening words of subsection (2) is at least a 40% share (see Part 17 for provisions about shares of partnership profits and losses). 5
- (7) In this section –
- “authorised corporate director” –
    - (a) in relation to any time on or after 1 April 2013, has the meaning given by the FCA Handbook at that time; 15
    - (b) in relation to any time before 1 April 2013, has the meaning given by the FCA Handbook as in force on 1 April 2013;
  - “contract for differences” has the meaning given by section 582;
  - “the FCA Handbook” means the Handbook made by the Financial Conduct Authority under FISMA 2000; 20
  - “friendly society” means a registered friendly society or an incorporated friendly society;
  - “group” has the same meaning as in Part 7A of CTA 2010 (see section 269BD of that Act); 25
  - “incorporated friendly society” means a society incorporated under the Friendly Societies Act 1992;
  - “insurance company” has the meaning given by section 133I;
  - “insurance special purpose vehicle” has the meaning given by section 139 of FA 2012; 30
  - “major interest” has the same meaning as in Part 5 (see section 473);
  - “partnership” has the same meaning as in section 133E;
  - “the PRA Handbook”, means the Handbook made by the Prudential Regulation Authority under FISMA 2000; 35
  - “registered friendly society” has the same meaning as in the Friendly Societies Act 1992 (and includes any society that as a result of section 96(2) of the Friendly Societies Act 1992 is treated as a registered friendly society);
  - “relevant regulated activity” has the meaning given by section 133G; 40
  - “retail client” –
    - (a) in relation to any time on or after 1 April 2013, has the meaning given by the FCA Handbook at that time;
    - (b) in relation to any time before 1 April 2013, has the meaning given by the FCA Handbook as in force on 1 April 2013. 45

### 133G Meaning of “relevant regulated activity”

- (1) In sections 133E and 133F “relevant regulated activity” means an activity which is a regulated activity for the purposes of FISMA 2000 by 50

virtue of any of the following provisions of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 (S.I. 2001/544) –

- (a) article 5 (accepting deposits);
  - (b) article 14 (dealing in investments as principal);
  - (c) article 21 (dealing in investments as agent); 5
  - (d) article 25 (arranging deals in investments);
  - (e) article 40 (safeguarding and administering investments);
  - (f) article 61 (regulated mortgage contracts).
- (2) In determining whether an activity carried on at any time before 1 December 2001 was at that time a relevant regulated activity, it is to be assumed that FISMA 2000 and the order mentioned in subsection (1) were in force in the form in which they had effect on 1 December 2001. 10

### 133H Investment bank

- (1) This section gives the meaning of “investment bank” for the purposes of section 133E; and in this section “the relevant entity” has the same meaning as in subsections (2) to (6) of that section. 15
- (2) At any time on or after 1 January 2014, the relevant entity is an investment bank if –
- (a) it is both an IFPRU 730k firm and a full scope IFPRU investment firm, or 20
  - (b) it is designated by the Prudential Regulation Authority under article 3 of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (PRA-regulated Activities) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/556) (dealing in investments as principal: designation by PRA).
- (3) At any time on or after 1 January 2007 but before 1 January 2014, the relevant entity was an investment bank if it was both a BIPRU 730k firm and a full scope BIPRU investment firm. 25
- (4) At any time before 1 January 2007, the relevant entity was an investment bank if it would have been both a BIPRU 730k firm and a full scope BIPRU investment firm if the Handbook of the Financial Services Authority in force on 1 January 2007 had been in force at that earlier time. 30
- (5) In subsections (2) to (4) –
- “IFPRU 730k firm” and “full scope IFPRU investment firm” have the meaning given by the FCA Handbook at the time in question; 35
  - “BIPRU 730k firm” and “full scope BIPRU investment firm” –
- (a) in relation to any time on or after 1 April 2013 have the meaning given by the PRA Handbook at that time;
  - (b) in relation to any time on or after 1 January 2007 but before 1 April 2013, have the meaning given by the Handbook of the Financial Services Authority at that time; 40
  - (c) in relation to any time before 1 January 2007, have the meaning given by the Handbook of the Financial Services Authority as in force on 1 January 2007. 45
- (6) If the relevant entity would at any time be an investment bank under subsection (2)(a), (3) or (4) by virtue of activities carried on in the United

Kingdom but for the fact that its registered office (or, if it does not have a registered office, its head office) is not in the United Kingdom, the relevant entity is to be treated for the purposes of section 133E as being an investment bank.

- (7) In this section – 5
- “the FCA Handbook” means the Handbook made by the Financial Conduct Authority under FISMA 2000;
  - “the PRA Handbook” means the Handbook made by the Prudential Regulation Authority under FISMA 2000.

**133I Meaning of “insurance company” 10**

- (1) For the purposes of section 133F a person who carries on the activity of effecting or carrying out contracts of insurance is an “insurance company” if –
- (a) the person has permission under Part 4A of FISMA 2000 to carry on that activity, 15
  - (b) the person is of the kind mentioned in paragraph 5(d) or (da) of Schedule 3 to FISMA 2000 (EEA passport rights) and carries on that activity in the United Kingdom through a permanent establishment there, or
  - (c) the person qualifies for authorisation under Schedule 4 to FISMA 2000 (Treaty rights) and carries on that activity in the United Kingdom through a permanent establishment there. 20
- (2) In relation to times in the period beginning with 1 December 2001 and ending with 31 March 2013, the reference in subsection (1)(a) to Part 4A of FISMA 2000 is to be read as a reference to Part 4 of that Act 25
- (3) In relation to times before 1 December 2001, this section has effect as if the following were substituted for subsection (1) –
- “(1) For the purposes of section 133F a person who carries on the activity of effecting or carrying out contracts of insurance is an “insurance company” if the person is – 30
- (a) authorised under section 3 or 4 of the Insurance Companies Act 1982, or
  - (b) an EC company within the meaning of the Insurance Companies Act 1982 which, by virtue of paragraph 1 or 8 of Schedule 2F to that Act, was able to carry on direct insurance business through a branch in the United Kingdom or provide insurance in the United Kingdom.” 35

**133J Meaning of “customer”**

- (1) For the purposes of section 133A, a person (“P”) is a “customer” in relation to a company (“company A”) if – 40
- (a) P uses, has used or may have contemplated using a financial service provided by company A, or
  - (b) has relevant rights or interests in relation to a financial service provided by company A.
- (2) In subsection (1) “financial service” means a service provided – 45
- (a) in carrying on regulated activities,

- 
- (b) in communicating, or approving the communication by others of, invitations or inducements to engage in investment activity, or
- (c) in providing relevant ancillary services (if company A is an investment firm or credit institution). 5
- (3) P has a “relevant right or interest” in relation to any service if P has a right or interest –
- (a) which is derived from, or is otherwise attributable to, the use of the service by another person, or
- (b) which may be adversely affected by the use of the service by persons acting on P’s behalf or in a fiduciary capacity in relation to P. 10
- (4) If company A is providing a service as a trustee, the persons who are, have been, or may have been, beneficiaries of the trust are to be treated as persons who use, have used, or may have contemplated using, the service. 15
- (5) A person who deals with company A in the course of company A providing a service is to be treated as using the service.
- (6) In this section –
- “credit institution” has the meaning given by section 1H(8) of FISMA 2000; 20
- “engage in investment activity” has the meaning given in section 21 of FISMA 2000;
- “investment firm” has the same meaning as in FISMA 2000 (see section 424A of that Act); 25
- “regulated activities” has the same meaning as in FISMA 2000 (see section 22 of that Act);
- “relevant ancillary services” means has the meaning given by section 1H(8) of FISMA 2000.
- 133K “Compensation” and related expressions 30**
- (1) In sections 133A to 133D references to compensation which is paid or payable “in respect of” relevant conduct include compensation which is paid (or to be paid) –
- (a) in connection with a claim by the customer for compensation in respect of the conduct, or 35
- (b) in circumstances where there is reason to suspect that company A may (or might in the absence of the payment) be or become liable to pay compensation in respect of relevant conduct –
- (i) to the customer, or
- (ii) in one or more of a class of cases which includes the customer’s case. 40
- (2) In sections 133A to 133D and this section “compensation” includes any form of redress, whether monetary or non-monetary, and accordingly includes interest. 45
- References in those sections to “payment” are to be interpreted accordingly.
- (3) In subsection (1) –

“claim” includes any claim or request, however made;  
“customer” has the meaning given by section 133J;  
“relevant conduct” is to be interpreted in accordance with section 133A(6).

<b>133L Associated companies</b>	5
(1) For the purposes of section 133A a company (“company B”) is associated with another company (“company A”) at a time (“the relevant time”) if any of the following 5 conditions is met.	
(2) The first condition is that the financial results of company A and company B, for a period that includes the relevant time, meet the consolidation condition.	10
(3) The second condition is that there is a connection between company A and company B for the accounting period of company A in which the relevant time falls.	
(4) The third condition is that, at the relevant time, company A has a major interest in company B or company B has a major interest in company A.	15
(5) The fourth condition is that –	
(a) the financial results of company A and a third company, for a period that includes the relevant time, meet the consolidation condition (see subsection (7)), and	20
(b) at the relevant time the third company has a major interest in company B.	
(6) The fifth condition is that –	
(a) there is a connection (see subsection (9)) between company A and a third company for the accounting period of company A in which the relevant time falls, and	25
(b) at the relevant time the third company has a major interest in company B.	
(7) In this section, the financial results of any two companies for any period meet the “consolidation condition” if –	30
(a) they are required to be comprised in group accounts,	
(b) they would be required to be comprised in group accounts but for the application of an exemption, or	
(c) they are in fact comprised in such accounts.	
(8) In subsection (7), “group accounts” means accounts prepared under –	35
(a) section 399 of the Companies Act 2006, or	
(b) any corresponding provision of the law of a territory outside the United Kingdom.	
(9) Sections 466 to 471 (companies connected for accounting period) apply for the purposes of this section.	40
(10) In this section “major interest” has the same meaning as in Part 5 (see section 473).	
<b>133M Application of sections 133A and 133B in relation to corporate partner</b>	
(1) If a firm carries on a trade and any partner in the firm (“the corporate partner”) is within the charge to corporation tax, this section applies in	45

- determining the profits of the trade, in relation to the corporate partner, in accordance with section 1259(3) or (4).
- (2) No deduction is allowed for expenses incurred by the firm if and so far as section 133A would prevent the expenses from being deductible if the firm were, and at all relevant times had been, a company. 5
- (3) In its application for the purposes of subsection (2), section 133A is to be read subject to subsections (4) to (6).
- (4) Section 133A(3)(b) is to be disregarded.
- (5) Conduct of the firm is “relevant conduct” if the conduct occurs – 10
- (a) on or after 29 April 1988, and
- (b) at a time when –
- (i) the corporate partner is for the purposes of section 133A a banking company, and
- (ii) the firm does not fall within any of paragraphs (a) to (h) of section 133F(2) (reading references in those paragraphs to companies as including references to firms). 15
- (6) The disclosure condition in section 133C may be met by a relevant document relating to the liability of the corporate partner (as well as by a relevant document relating to the liability of the firm). 20
- (7) Where in any accounting period of the firm (as defined by section 1261) the firm incurs expenses which but for section 133A (as read with subsections (2) to (6)) would be deductible in calculating the profits of the trade, the profits of the firm’s trade are to be determined as if the references in section 133B to a company were a reference to the firm. 25

### 133N Powers to amend

- (1) The Treasury may by regulations make such amendments of sections 133A to 133L as they consider appropriate in consequence of –
- (a) any change made to, or replacement of, the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 (S.I. 2001/544) or the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (PRA-regulated Activities) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/556) (or any replacement); 30
- (b) any change made to, or replacement of, the FCA Handbook or the PRA Handbook (or any replacement); 35
- (c) any regulatory requirement, or change to any regulatory requirement, imposed by EU legislation, or by or under any Act (whenever adopted, enacted or made).
- (2) The Treasury may by regulations –
- (a) amend sections 133A(1) and 133C for the purpose of varying the class of expenses to which section 133A(1) applies; 40
- (b) amend section 133D for the purpose of adding cases to those for the time being listed in subsection (1) of that section;
- (c) amend section 133D for any other purpose;
- (d) amend any of sections 133E to 133I; 45
- (e) amend section 133M.

- 
- (3) Regulations under this section may include transitional provision.
- (4) A statutory instrument containing only regulations under subsection (1) or (2)(b) is subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of the House of Commons.
- (5) Any other statutory instrument containing regulations under this section may not be made unless a draft of the instrument has been laid before and approved by a resolution of the House of Commons. 5
- (6) In this section –  
    “the FCA Handbook” means the Handbook made by the Financial Conduct Authority under FISMA 2000 (as that Handbook has effect from time to time); 10  
    “the PRA Handbook” means the Handbook made by the Prudential Regulation Authority under FISMA 2000 (as that Handbook has effect from time to time).”
- (2) The amendment made by this section has effect in relation to accounting periods beginning on or after the commencement date. 15
- (3) “The commencement date” means –  
    (a) except for the purposes of section 133M of CTA 2009, 8 July 2015;  
    (b) for the purposes of that section, 15 July 2015.
- (4) Subsection (5) applies where a company has an accounting period beginning before the commencement date and ending on or after that date (“the straddling period”). 20
- (5) For the purposes of sections 133A to 133N of CTA 2009 –  
    (a) so much of the straddling accounting period as falls before the commencement date and so much of that period as falls on or after that date, are treated as separate accounting periods, and 25  
    (b) any amounts brought into account for the purposes of calculating for corporation tax purposes the profits of a trade for the straddling accounting period are apportioned to the two separate accounting periods on such basis as is just and reasonable. 30
- 19 Banks established under Savings Bank (Scotland) Act 1819: loss allowance**
- (1) In Part 7A of CTA 2010 (banking companies), in section 269CN (definitions), in the definition of “building society”, at the end insert “except that it also includes a bank established under the Savings Bank (Scotland) Act 1819”.
- (2) The amendment made by this section is treated as having come into force on 1 April 2015. 35
- 20 Definitions relating to banks**
- (1) Schedule 19 to FA 2011 (the bank levy) is amended in accordance with subsections (2) to (7).
- (2) In paragraph 12 – 40  
    (a) in sub-paragraph (8)(a)(iv) –  
        (i) after “relevant” insert “regulated”;

- (ii) for “a BIPRU 730k firm and a full scope BIPRU investment firm,” substitute “an IFPRU 730k firm and a full scope IFPRU investment firm,”;
- (b) in sub-paragraph (8)(b)(iv) –
- (i) after “relevant” insert “regulated”;
- (ii) for “a BIPRU 730k firm and a full scope BIPRU investment firm” substitute “an IFPRU 730k firm and a full scope IFPRU investment firm”.
- (3) In paragraph 70 –
- (a) in sub-paragraph (1), at the appropriate places insert –
- ““the FCA Handbook” means the Handbook made by the Financial Conduct Authority under FISMA 2000 (as that Handbook has effect from time to time);”;
- ““investment bank” means an entity which –
- (a) is both an IFPRU 730k firm and a full scope IFPRU investment firm, or
- (b) is designated by the Prudential Regulation Authority under article 3 of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (PRA-regulated Activities) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/556) (dealing in investments as principal: designation by PRA);”;
- (b) in sub-paragraph (2), in the list of terms, omit the entries relating to “BIPRU 730k firm”, “exempt BIPRU commodities firm” and “full scope BIPRU investment firm”;
- (c) after sub-paragraph (2) insert –
- “(2A) In this Schedule the following terms have the meaning given in the FCA Handbook –
- “exempt IFPRU commodities firm”;
- “full scope IFPRU investment firm”;
- “IFPRU 730k firm”.”;
- (d) in sub-paragraph (3), for “a BIPRU 730k firm and a full scope BIPRU investment firm” substitute “an IFPRU 730k firm and a full scope IFPRU investment firm”.
- (4) In paragraph 72(3)(a), for “both a BIPRU 730k firm and a full scope BIPRU investment firm,” substitute “an investment bank,”.
- (5) In paragraph 73(1), for paragraph (f) substitute –
- “(f) an exempt IFPRU commodities firm,”.
- (6) In paragraph 78(1)(c)(ii), for “both a BIPRU 730k firm and a full scope BIPRU investment firm,” substitute “an investment bank,”.
- (7) In paragraph 80(1)(c)(ii) for “both a BIPRU 730k firm and a full scope BIPRU investment firm,” substitute “an investment bank,”.
- (8) The amendments made by subsections (1) to (7), are treated as having come into force on 1 January 2014.
- (9) Part 7A of CTA 2010 (banking companies) has effect, and is to be deemed always to have had effect, with the amendments set out in subsections (10) to (12).
- (10) In section 269B (meaning of “banking company”) –

- (a) for subsection (5) substitute –
- “(5) Condition D is that, at any time in the accounting period –
- (a) the relevant entity’s activities include the relevant regulated activity described in the provision mentioned in section 269BB(a), or 5
- (b) the relevant entity is an investment bank (see subsection (6A)) whose activities consist wholly or mainly of any of the relevant regulated activities described in the provisions mentioned in section 269BB(b) to (f).”;
- (b) after subsection (6) insert – 10
- “(6A) The relevant entity is an “investment bank” if –
- (a) it is both an IFPRU 730k firm and a full scope IFPRU investment firm, or
- (b) it is designated by the Prudential Regulation Authority under article 3 of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (PRA-regulated Activities) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/556) (dealing in investments as principal: designation by PRA).” 15
- (11) In section 269BA (excluded entities), in subsection (1)(f), omit “or exempt BIPRU commodities firm”. 20
- (12) In section 269BC (banking companies: supplementary definitions) –
- (a) in subsection (8), in the list of terms, omit the entries relating to “BIPRU 730K firm”, “exempt BIPRU commodities firm” and “full scope BIPRU investment firm”;
- (b) omit subsection (9). 25

#### PART 4

##### INCOME TAX, CORPORATION TAX AND CAPITAL GAINS TAX

###### *Income tax*

#### **21 Pensions: special lump sum death benefits charge**

- (1) Section 206 of FA 2004 (special lump sum death benefits charge) is amended in accordance with subsections (2) to (5). 30
- (2) In each of subsections (1), (1A), (1B)(a) and (1C)(a) (which specify payments attracting the charge) after “paid” insert “, to a non-qualifying person,”.
- (3) In subsection (1B)(b) (payments attracting charge if paid more than 2 years after death of member under 75), before the “or” at the end of sub-paragraph (ii) insert – 35
- “(ii) a defined benefits lump sum death benefit,”.
- (4) In subsection (7) (sums taxed under section 206 not income for income tax purposes), at the end insert “(but see subsection (8)).”
- (5) After subsection (7) insert – 40
- “(8) Where –

- (a) a lump sum death benefit in respect of which tax is charged under this section is one paid to a non-qualifying person in the person’s capacity as a trustee, and
- (b) a payment of any part of the lump sum is made out of a settlement to a beneficiary who is an individual, 5  
the amount received by the beneficiary, together with so much of the tax charged under this section on the lump sum as is attributable to the amount received by the beneficiary, is income of the beneficiary for income tax purposes but the beneficiary may claim to deduct that much of that tax from the income tax charged on the beneficiary’s total income for the tax year in which the payment is made to the beneficiary. 10
- (9) For the purposes of this section, a person is a “non-qualifying person” in relation to payment of a lump sum if –
- (a) the person is not an individual, or
- (b) the person is an individual and the payment is made to the person in the person’s capacity as – 15
- (i) a trustee or personal representative,
- (ii) a director of a company,
- (iii) a partner in a firm, or
- (iv) a member of a limited liability partnership, 20
- except that a person is not a “non-qualifying person” in relation to payment of a lump sum if the payment is made to the person in the person’s capacity as a bare trustee.
- (10) In subsection (9) –
- “bare trustee” means a person acting as trustee for – 25
- (a) an individual absolutely entitled as against the trustee,
- (b) two or more individuals who are so entitled,
- (c) an individual who would be so entitled but for being a minor or otherwise lacking legal capacity, or
- (d) two or more individuals who would be so entitled but for all or any of them being a minor or otherwise lacking legal capacity, 30
- “director” is read in accordance with section 452 of CTA 2010, and references to a firm are to be read in the same way as references to a firm in Part 9 of ITTOIA 2005 (which contains special provision about partnerships).” 35
- (6) In section 251(4) of FA 2004 (powers to impose information requirements), after paragraph (b) insert –
- “(ba) requiring, in a case where a payment (“the onwards payment”) is made directly or indirectly out of a sum on whose payment tax has been charged under section 206, the person making the onwards payment to provide information of a prescribed description to the person to whom the onwards payment is made,”. 40
- (7) In Part 2 of Schedule 29 to FA 2004 (interpretation of lump sum death benefit rule), in paragraph 13 (defined benefits lump sum death benefit) – 45
- (a) in sub-paragraph (1) omit the second sentence (exclusion of sums paid more than 2 years after death of member under 75), and
- (b) omit sub-paragraph (2) (interpretation of that sentence).

- (8) In consequence of subsection (7), in paragraph 33 of Schedule 16 to FA 2011 –
  - (a) in sub-paragraph (3) omit paragraph (c), and
  - (b) omit sub-paragraph (4).
- (9) The amendments made by this section have effect in relation to lump sums paid on or after 6 April 2016. 5

## 22 Pensions: some lump sum death benefits taxed as pension income

- (1) Part 9 of ITEPA 2003 (pension income) is amended in accordance with subsections (2) to (7).
- (2) In section 636A (lump sums under registered pension schemes) for subsection (4) (certain death benefit lump sums) substitute – 10
  - “(4) If a lump sum under a registered pension scheme –
    - (a) is listed in section 636AA, and
    - (b) is paid to a non-qualifying person (see subsection (8)),the sum is subject to income tax under section 206 of FA 2004 (charge to tax on scheme administrator in respect of certain lump sum death benefits) and not otherwise (but see section 206(8) of FA 2004). 15
  - (4ZA) If a lump sum under a registered pension scheme –
    - (a) is listed in section 636AA, and
    - (b) is paid to a qualifying person (see subsection (8)),section 579A applies in relation to the sum as it applies to any pension under a registered pension scheme.” 20
- (3) In section 636A(1) (no liability to income tax on certain lump sum death benefits) –
  - (a) after paragraph (c) insert “or”, and
  - (b) omit paragraph (d) (certain defined benefits lump sum death benefits) and the “or” preceding it. 25
- (4) In section 636A, after subsection (7) insert –
  - “(8) For the purposes of this section –
    - (a) a person is a “non-qualifying person” in relation to payment of a lump sum if, for the purposes of section 206 of FA 2004, the person is a non-qualifying person in relation to payment of the sum, and 30
    - (b) a person is a “qualifying person” in relation to payment of a lump sum except where the person is a non-qualifying person in relation to payment of the sum.” 35
- (5) After section 636A insert –
  - “**636AA Taxable lump sum death benefits**
    - (1) The following are the lump sums mentioned in section 636A(4) and (4ZA).
    - (2) An annuity protection lump sum death benefit, or a pension protection lump sum death benefit, paid in respect of a member of the scheme who had reached the age of 75 at the date of the member’s death. 40

- 
- (3) A drawdown pension fund lump sum death benefit under paragraph 17(1) of Schedule 29 to FA 2004, a flexi-access drawdown fund lump sum death benefit under paragraph 17A(1) of that Schedule, a defined benefits lump sum death benefit or an uncrystallised funds lump sum death benefit – 5
- (a) paid in respect of a member of the scheme who had reached the age of 75 at the date of the member’s death, or
- (b) paid in respect of a member of the scheme who had not reached the age of 75 at the date of the member’s death, but not paid before the end of the relevant 2-year period in respect of the member’s death. 10
- (4) A drawdown pension fund lump sum death benefit under paragraph 17(2) of Schedule 29 to FA 2004 or a flexi-access drawdown fund lump sum death benefit under paragraph 17A(2) of that Schedule –
- (a) paid on the death of a dependant of a deceased member of the scheme where the dependant had reached the age of 75 at the date of the dependant’s death, or 15
- (b) paid on the death of a dependant of a deceased member of the scheme where the dependant had not reached the age of 75 at the date of the dependant’s death, but not paid before the end of the relevant 2-year period in respect of the dependant’s death. 20
- (5) A flexi-access drawdown fund lump sum death benefit under paragraph 17A(3) or (4) of Schedule 29 to FA 2004 –
- (a) paid on the death of a nominee or successor (as the case may be) of a deceased member of the scheme where the nominee or successor (“the beneficiary”) had reached the age of 75 at the date of the beneficiary’s death, or 25
- (b) paid on the death of a nominee or successor (as the case may be) of a deceased member of the scheme where the nominee or successor (“the beneficiary”) had not reached the age of 75 at the date of the beneficiary’s death, but not paid before the end of the relevant 2-year period in respect of the beneficiary’s death. 30
- (6) In this section –
- “dependant”, “nominee” and “successor” have the meaning given, respectively, by paragraphs 15, 27A and 27F of Schedule 28 to FA 2004, and 35
- “relevant 2-year period”, in relation to a death, means the period of 2 years beginning with the earlier of –
- (a) the day on which the scheme administrator of the scheme mentioned in section 636A(4) or (4ZA) (as the case may be) first knew of the death, and 40
- (b) the day on which that scheme administrator could first reasonably have been expected to have known of it.
- (7) Section 636A(4A) and (7) (interpretation) apply also for the purposes of this section.” 45
- (6) In section 579CA as substituted by paragraph 117 of Schedule 45 to FA 2013 (pensions under registered pension schemes: temporary non-residents), in subsection (4) (which lists relevant withdrawals) as substituted by the Taxation of Pensions Act 2014 – 50

- (a) omit the “or” at the end of paragraph (k), and
  - (b) after paragraph (l) insert “, or
    - (m) any payment to the person of a lump sum to which section 579A applies by virtue of section 636A(4ZA).”
- (7) In the version of section 579CA which has effect if the year of departure is the tax year 2012-13 or an earlier tax year, in subsection (3A) (which lists relevant withdrawals) – 5
- (a) omit the “or” at the end of paragraph (k), and
  - (b) after paragraph (l) insert “, or
    - (m) any payment to the person of a lump sum to which section 579A applies by virtue of section 636A(4ZA).” 10
- (8) In section 683 of ITEPA 2003 (meaning of “PAYE income”) –
- (a) in subsection (3) (meaning, subject to subsections (3A) and (3B), of “PAYE pension income”) for “and (3B)” substitute “to (3C)”, and
  - (b) after subsection (3B) insert – 15
    - “(3C) “PAYE pension income” for a tax year does not include any taxable pension income that is treated as accruing in that tax year by virtue of section 636A(1A) to (1C) or (4ZA) so far as having effect as applied by paragraph 1(3)(da) or (db) of Schedule 34 to FA 2004.” 20
- (9) In section 168(2) of FA 2004 (meaning of “lump sum death benefit”), at the end insert “, or a lump sum payable in respect of the member on the subsequent death of a dependant, nominee or successor of the member.”
- (10) In Schedule 34 to FA 2004 (application of certain charges to non-UK pension schemes) – 25
- (a) in paragraph 1(3) (meaning of “member payment charges”), before the “and” at the end of paragraph (da) insert –
    - “(db) the charge under section 636A(4ZA) of ITEPA 2003 (certain payments of lump sum death benefits),” and
  - (b) in paragraph 1(4)(b) (provisions of ITEPA 2003 which are “member payment provisions”) after “636A(1A) to (1C)” insert “and (4ZA) and section 636AA”. 30
- (11) In consequence of subsections (2) and (3) –
- (a) in Schedule 16 to FA 2011, omit paragraph 42(2)(b) and (4), and
  - (b) in the Taxation of Pensions Act 2014 – 35
    - (i) in Schedule 1 omit paragraph 31(a), and
    - (ii) in Schedule 2 omit paragraph 19(3)(a)(i).
- (12) The amendments made by subsections (2) to (8), (10) and (11) have effect in relation to lump sums paid on or after 6 April 2016.
- (13) The amendment made by subsection (9) is to be treated as having come into force on 15 July 2015. 40

## 23 Pensions: annual allowance

Schedule 4 contains provision in connection with the annual allowance for inputs into pension schemes.

**24 Relief for finance costs related to residential property businesses**

- (1) ITTOIA 2005 is amended in accordance with subsections (2) to (6).
- (2) After section 272 insert –

**“272A Restricting deductions for finance costs related to residential property**

- (1) Where a deduction is allowed for costs of a dwelling-related loan in calculating the profits of a property business for the tax year 2017-18, the amount allowed to be deducted in respect of those costs in calculating those profits for income tax purposes is 75% of what would be allowed apart from this section. 5
- (2) Where a deduction is allowed for costs of a dwelling-related loan in calculating the profits of a property business for the tax year 2018-19, the amount allowed to be deducted in respect of those costs in calculating those profits for income tax purposes is 50% of what would be allowed apart from this section. 10
- (3) Where a deduction is allowed for costs of a dwelling-related loan in calculating the profits of a property business for the tax year 2019-20, the amount allowed to be deducted in respect of those costs in calculating those profits for income tax purposes is 25% of what would be allowed apart from this section. 15
- (4) In calculating the profits of a property business for income tax purposes for the tax year 2020-21 or any subsequent tax year, no deduction is allowed for costs of a dwelling-related loan. 20
- (5) Subsections (1) to (4) do not apply in relation to a property business carried on by a company otherwise than in a fiduciary or representative capacity. 25
- (6) For the meaning of “costs of a dwelling-related loan” see section 272B.

**272B Meaning of “costs of a dwelling-related loan”**

- (1) Subsections (2) to (5) apply for the purposes of section 272A.
- (2) “Dwelling-related loan”, in relation to a property business, means so much of an amount borrowed for purposes of the business as is referable (on a just and reasonable apportionment) to so much of the business as is carried on for the purpose of generating income from – 30
  - (a) land consisting of a dwelling-house or part of a dwelling-house, or
  - (b) an estate, interest or right in or over land within paragraph (a), but see subsections (3) and (4). 35
- (3) Anything that in the course of a property business is done for creating (by construction or adaptation) a dwelling-house, or part of a dwelling-house, from which income is to be generated is, for the purposes of subsection (2), to be treated as done for the purpose mentioned in that subsection. 40
- (4) An amount borrowed for purposes of a property business is not a dwelling-related loan so far as the amount is referable (on a just and reasonable apportionment) to so much of the property business as

- consists of the commercial letting of furnished holiday accommodation.
- (5) “Costs”, in relation to a dwelling-related loan, means –
- (a) interest on the loan,
  - (b) an amount in connection with the loan that, for the person receiving or entitled to the amount, is a return in relation to the loan which is economically equivalent to interest, or
  - (c) incidental costs of obtaining finance by means of the loan.
- (6) Section 58(2) to (4) (meaning of “incidental costs of obtaining finance”) apply for the purposes of subsection (5)(c). 5
- (7) A reference in this section to a “dwelling-house” includes any land occupied or enjoyed with it as its garden or grounds. 10
- (3) In section 274(1)(b) (rules which override rules allowing deductions) after “as applied by section 272” insert “, and to section 272A (finance costs)”.
- (4) In section 274(3) (meaning of “relevant prohibitive rule”) after “as applied by section 272” insert “, and apart also from section 272A”. 15
- (5) After section 274 insert –

*“Tax reduction for non-deductible finance costs*

**274A Tax reduction for non-deductible costs of a dwelling-related loan**

- (1) Subsections (2) to (5) apply if – 20
- (a) an amount (“A”) would be deductible in calculating the profits for income tax purposes of a property business for a tax year but for section 272A, and
  - (b) a particular individual is liable to income tax on N% of those profits, where N is a number – 25
    - (i) greater than 0, and
    - (ii) less than or equal to 100.
- (2) The individual is entitled to relief under this section for the tax year in respect of an amount (the “relievable amount”) equal to N% of A.
- (3) Subject to subsection (4), the amount of the relief is given by – 30
- $$BR \times L$$
- where BR is the basic rate of income tax for the year, and L is the lower of –
- (a) the total of – 35
    - (i) the relievable amount, and
    - (ii) any difference available in relation to the individual and the property business for carry-forward to the year under subsection (5), and
  - (b) the profits for income tax purposes of the property business for the year after any deduction under section 118 of ITA 2007 (“the adjusted profits”) or, if less, the share of the adjusted profits on which the individual is liable to income tax. 40
- (4) If the individual’s gross finance-costs relief for the year (“GFCR”) is greater than the individual’s adjusted total income for the year (“ATI”),

the amount of the relief under this section for the year in respect of the relievable amount is –

$$\frac{\text{ATI}}{\text{GFCR}} \times (\text{BR} \times \text{L})$$

where BR and L have the same meaning as in subsection (3).

- (5) Where the amount (“AY”) of the relief under this section for the year in respect of the relievable amount is less than – 5

$$\text{BR} \times \text{T}$$

where BR is basic rate of income tax for the year and T is the total found at subsection (3)(a), the difference between –

- (a) T, and 10  
 (b) AY divided by BR (with BR expressed as a fraction for this purpose),

is available in relation to the individual and the property business for carry-forward to the following tax year.

- (6) For the purposes of this section – 15

- (a) an individual’s adjusted total income for a tax year is the individual’s total income for that year less the total of –

- (i) so much of that total income as is savings income,  
 (ii) so much of that total income as is dividend income, and  
 (iii) any allowances to which the individual is entitled for that year under Chapter 2 of Part 3 of ITA 2007 (individuals: personal and blind person’s allowance), and 20

- (b) an individual’s gross finance-costs relief for a tax year is the total relief to which the individual is entitled for the year under this section before any adjustment under subsection (4).” 25

- (6) In section 322 (which lists provisions relying on the definition of “commercial letting of furnished holiday accommodation”) –

- (a) in subsections (2) and (2A), before paragraph (a) insert –  
 “(za) section 272B(4) (exception from restriction on deductibility of finance costs),” 30

- (b) in subsection (2), before the “and” at the end of paragraph (g) insert –  
 “(ga) section 399A(9) of ITA 2007 (exception from restriction on deductibility of interest on loans to invest in partnerships),” and 35

- (c) in subsection (2A), before the “and” at the end of paragraph (e) insert –  
 “(ea) section 399A(9) of ITA 2007 (exception from restriction on deductibility of interest on loans to invest in partnerships),”.

- (7) In ITA 2007, after section 399 insert – 40

**“399A Property partnerships: restriction of relief for investment loan interest**

- (1) This section applies to interest on a loan within section 398 if –  
 (a) the partnership concerned carries on a property business, and  
 (b) that property business or part of it is carried on for the purpose of generating income from – 45

- (i) land consisting of a dwelling-house or part of a dwelling-house, or
    - (ii) an estate, interest or right in or over land within subparagraph (i).
  - (2) Subsections (3) to (6) have effect to restrict relief under section 383(1) for so much of the interest as is referable (on a just and reasonable apportionment) to the property business or (as the case may be) the part of it within subsection (1)(b). 5
  - (3) For the tax year 2017-18, the amount of that relief is 75% of what would be given apart from this section. 10
  - (4) For the tax year 2018-19, the amount of that relief is 50% of what would be given apart from this section.
  - (5) For the tax year 2019-20, the amount of that relief is 25% of what would be given apart from this section.
  - (6) For the tax year 2020-21 and subsequent tax years, that interest is not eligible for relief under this Chapter. 15
  - (7) Section 399(4) is to be applied in relation to the tax year to which subsection (3), (4) or (5) applies before that subsection is applied in relation to that tax year.
  - (8) Anything that in the course of a property business is done for creating (by construction or adaptation) a dwelling-house, or part of a dwelling-house, from which income is to be generated is, for the purposes of subsection (1)(b), to be treated as done for the purpose mentioned in subsection (1)(b). 20
  - (9) A property business, or part of a property business, that consists of the commercial letting of furnished holiday accommodation (as defined by Chapter 6 of Part 3 of ITTOIA 2005) is not within subsection (1)(b). 25
  - (10) A reference in this section to a “dwelling-house” includes any land occupied or enjoyed with it as its garden or grounds.
- 399B Property partnerships: tax reduction for non-deductible loan interest** 30
- (1) Subsections (2) and (3) apply if for a tax year an individual would be given relief for an amount (“the relievable amount”) by section 383(1) but for section 399A.
  - (2) The individual is entitled to relief under this section for the tax year in respect of the relievable amount. 35
  - (3) The amount of the relief is given by –  
$$\text{BR} \times \text{the relievable amount}$$
where BR is the basic rate of income tax for the year.”
- (8) In section 26(1)(a) of ITA 2007 (tax reductions deductible at Step 6 of the calculation in section 23 of ITA 2007) – 40
- (a) after the entry for Chapter 1 of Part 7 of ITA 2007 insert –  
“section 399B (relief for non-deductible interest on loan to invest in partnership with residential property business),” and

- (b) before the entry for section 535 of ITTOIA 2005 insert –  
“section 274A of ITTOIA 2005 (property business: relief for non-deductible costs of a dwelling-related loan),”.
- 25 Enterprise investment scheme**
- Schedule 5 contains amendments of Part 5 of ITA 2007 (enterprise investment scheme). 5
- 26 Venture capital trusts**
- Schedule 6 contains amendments of Part 6 of ITA 2007 (venture capital trusts).
- 27 EIS, VCTs and EMI: meaning of “farming”**
- (1) In section 996 of ITA 2007 (meaning of “farming” and related expressions), omit subsection (7). 10
- (2) The amendment made by subsection (1) –
- (a) in relation to the application of section 996 of ITA 2007 for the purposes of section 192(1) of that Act, has effect in relation to shares issued on or after the day on which this Act is passed; 15
- (b) in relation to the application of section 996 of that Act for the purposes of section 303(1) of that Act, has effect for the purposes of determining whether shares or securities issued on or after that day are to be regarded as comprised in a company’s qualifying holdings;
- (c) in relation to the application of section 996 for the purposes of paragraph 16 of Schedule 5 to ITEPA 2003, has effect in relation to options granted on or after that day. 20
- 28 Travel expenses of members of local authorities etc**
- (1) ITEPA 2003 is amended as follows.
- (2) In section 229(2) (mileage allowance payments), for “section 236(1)” substitute “sections 235A and 236(1)”. 25
- (3) After section 235 insert –
- “235A Journeys made by members of local authorities etc**
- (1) Subject to subsections (2) and (3), a qualifying journey made by a member of a relevant authority is to be treated as business travel for the purposes of this Chapter if a qualifying payment is made by the authority – 30
- (a) to the member for expenses related to the member’s use for the journey of a vehicle to which this Chapter applies, or
- (b) to another member of the authority for carrying the member as a passenger on the journey in a car or van. 35
- (2) A qualifying journey is not to be treated as business travel –
- (a) for the purposes of section 231, or
- (b) when calculating for the purposes of that section the mileage allowance payments paid to the member in respect of the journey and the approved amount for such payments. 40

- (3) If a journey made by a member of a relevant authority is a qualifying journey and a qualifying payment is made to the member for carrying a passenger on the journey, the member’s journey is not to be treated as business travel in respect of that passenger for the purposes of sections 233 and 234 unless the passenger is also a member of the authority. 5
- (4) A journey made by a member of a relevant authority is a “qualifying journey” for the purposes of this section if—
- (a) it is a journey between the member’s home and permanent workplace, and
  - (b) the member’s home is situated in the area of the authority, or no more than 20 miles outside the boundary of the area. 10
- (5) In this section “permanent workplace” has the same meaning as in Part 5 (see section 339).
- (6) The Treasury may by regulations—
- (a) provide for bodies specified in the regulations (which must be local authorities or bodies that have similar or related functions or purposes) to be relevant authorities for the purposes of this section, 15
  - (b) provide for references in this section to a member of a relevant authority to be read as references to a member of a description prescribed in the regulations, and 20
  - (c) define what is meant by “qualifying payment” for the purposes of this section.
- (7) The regulations may contain transitional provision and savings.”
- (4) In section 236 (interpretation of Chapter 2 of Part 4), after subsection (1) insert—
- “(1A) For journeys that are treated as business travel for the purposes of certain provisions of this Chapter, see section 235A (journeys made by members of local authorities etc).”
- (5) After section 295 insert— 30

*“Members of local authorities etc*

**295A Travel expenses of members of local authorities etc**

- (1) No liability to income tax arises in respect of a qualifying payment made to a member of a relevant authority for travel expenses incurred by the member if— 35
- (a) the payment is for expenses other than those related to the member’s use of a vehicle to which Chapter 2 applies, and
  - (b) the expenses are not excluded by subsection (2).
- (2) Expenses are excluded by this subsection if—
- (a) they are incurred on a journey between the member’s home and permanent workplace, and 40
  - (b) the member’s home is situated more than 20 miles outside the boundary of the area of the relevant authority.
- (3) In this section “permanent workplace” has the same meaning as in Part 5 (see section 339). 45

- (4) The Treasury may by regulations –
- (a) provide for bodies specified in the regulations (which must be local authorities or bodies that have similar or related functions or purposes) to be relevant authorities for the purposes of this section, 5
  - (b) provide for references in this section to a member of a relevant authority to be read as references to a member of a description prescribed in the regulations, and
  - (c) define what is meant by “qualifying payment” for the purposes of this section. 10
- (5) The regulations may contain transitional provision and savings.”
- (6) In Schedule 1 (index of defined expressions), in the entry relating to business travel in Chapter 2 of Part 4, for “section 236(1)” substitute “sections 235A and 236(1)”.
- (7) The amendments made by this section have effect for the tax year 2016-17 and subsequent tax years. 15

## 29 London Anniversary Games

- (1) A duly accredited competitor who performs an Anniversary Games activity is not liable to income tax in respect of any income arising from the activity if the non-residence condition is met. 20
- (2) The following are Anniversary Games activities –
- (a) competing at the Anniversary Games, and
  - (b) any activity that is performed during the Games period the main purpose of which is to support or promote the Anniversary Games.
- (3) The non-residence condition is that – 25
- (a) the accredited competitor is non-UK resident for the tax year 2015-16, or
  - (b) the accredited competitor is UK resident for the tax year 2015-16 but the year is a split year as respects the competitor and the activity is performed in the overseas part of the year. 30
- (4) Section 966 of ITA 2007 (deductions of sums representing income tax) does not apply to any payment or transfer which gives rise to income benefiting from the exemption under subsection (1).
- (5) In this section –
- “Anniversary Games” means the athletics event held at the Olympic Stadium in London on 24 - 26 July 2015; 35
  - “Games period” means the period –
    - (a) beginning with 22 July 2015, and
    - (b) ending with 28 July 2015;
  - “income” means employment income or profits of a trade, profession or vocation (including profits treated as arising as result of section 13 of ITTOIA 2005). 40
- (6) This section is treated as having come into force on 8 July 2015.

*Corporation tax*

**30 R&D expenditure credits: ineligible companies**

- (1) CTA 2009 is amended as follows.
- (2) In section 104A (R&D expenditure credits), after subsection (7) insert –  
“(7A) Section 104WA contains provision about ineligible companies.” 5
- (3) After section 104W insert –

*“Ineligible companies*

**104WA Ineligible companies**

- (1) No claim for an R&D expenditure credit may be made in respect of expenditure incurred by an ineligible company. 10
- (2) In this section, “ineligible company” means a company that is –
  - (a) an institution of higher education (as defined by section 1142(1)(b)),
  - (b) a charity, or
  - (c) a company of a description prescribed by the Treasury by regulations.” 15
- (4) In section 1310(4) (orders and regulations subject to affirmative procedure), before paragraph (zza) insert –  
“(zza) section 104WA (ineligible companies for the purposes of R&D expenditure credits),” 20
- (5) The amendments made by this section have effect in relation to expenditure incurred on or after 1 August 2015.

**31 Loan relationships and derivative contracts**

Schedule 7 contains provisions relating to loan relationships and derivative contracts. 25

**32 Intangible fixed assets: goodwill etc**

- (1) Part 8 of CTA 2009 (intangible fixed assets) is amended as follows.
- (2) In section 715 (application of Part 8 to goodwill), in subsection (2), at the end insert “(see, in particular, section 816A (restrictions on goodwill and certain other assets))”. 30
- (3) In section 746 (“non-trading credits” and “non-trading debits”), in subsection (2), for paragraph (ba) substitute –  
“(ba) section 816A (restrictions on goodwill and certain other assets), and”.
- (4) In section 800 (introduction to Chapter 10: excluded assets), in subsection (2)(c) –
  - (a) for “section 814 or 815” substitute “any of sections 814 to 816A”, and
  - (b) for “that section” substitute “the section concerned”. 35

- (5) After section 816 insert –
- “816A Restrictions on goodwill and certain other assets**
- (1) This section applies if a company acquires or creates a relevant asset.
- (2) “Relevant asset” means –
- (a) goodwill, 5
  - (b) an intangible fixed asset that consists of information which relates to customers or potential customers of a business,
  - (c) an intangible fixed asset that consists of a relationship (whether contractual or not) between a person carrying on a business and one or more customers of that business, 10
  - (d) an unregistered trade mark or other sign used in the course of a business, or
  - (e) a licence or other right in respect of an asset within any of paragraphs (a) to (d).
- (3) No debits are to be brought into account by the company for tax purposes, in respect of the relevant asset, under Chapter 3 (debts in respect of intangible fixed assets). 15
- (4) Any debit brought into account by the company for tax purposes, in respect of the relevant asset, under Chapter 4 (realisation of intangible fixed assets) is treated for the purposes of Chapter 6 as a non-trading debit.” 20
- (6) In section 844 (overview of Chapter 13: transactions between related parties), omit subsection (2A).
- (7) Omit sections 849B to 849D (restrictions relating to goodwill etc acquired from a related individual or firm) and the italic heading immediately before those sections. 25
- (8) In consequence of the amendments made by this section, in FA 2015, omit section 26.
- (9) The amendments made by this section have effect in relation to accounting periods beginning on or after 8 July 2015. 30
- (10) But the amendments made by this section do not apply in a case in which a company acquires a relevant asset if the company does so –
- (a) before 8 July 2015, or
  - (b) in pursuance of an obligation, under a contract, that was unconditional before that date. 35
- (11) For the purposes of subsection (9), an accounting period beginning before, and ending on or after, 8 July 2015 is to be treated as if so much of the accounting period as falls before that date, and so much of the accounting period as falls on or after that date, were separate accounting periods.
- (12) An apportionment for the purposes of subsection (11) must be made in accordance with section 1172 of CTA 2010 (time basis) or, if that method produces a result that is unjust or unreasonable, on a just and reasonable basis. 40
- (13) For the purposes of subsection (10)(b), an obligation is “unconditional” if it may not be varied or extinguished by the exercise of a right (whether under the contract or otherwise). 45

### 33 Election of designated currency by UK resident investment company

- (1) Chapter 4 of Part 2 of CTA 2010 (currency) is amended as follows.
- (2) Section 9A (designated currency of a UK resident investment company) is amended as follows.
- (3) For subsection (2) substitute – 5
  - “(2) An election under this section by a company (“X”) takes effect only if, at the time when it is to take effect (see section 9B(1)) –
    - (a) X is a UK resident investment company, and
    - (b) Condition A or Condition B is met.”
- (4) Omit subsection (3). 10
- (5) After subsection (8) insert –
  - “(9) In relation to any period of account for which a currency is X’s designated currency as a result of an election under this section, profits or losses of X that fall to be calculated in accordance with generally accepted accounting practice for corporation tax purposes must be calculated as if – 15
    - (a) the designated currency were the functional currency of the company, and
    - (b) no part of X’s business could, in accordance with generally accepted accounting practice, be regarded as having another 20currency as its functional currency.”
- (6) Section 9B (period for which election under section 9A has effect) is amended as follows.
- (7) In subsection (1), for “section 9A(2)(a)” substitute “section 9A”.
- (8) Omit subsection (2). 25
- (9) In subsection (3), for “section 9A(2)(a)” substitute “section 9A”.
- (10) In subsection (6), for the words from the beginning to “only” substitute “A revocation event occurs in the period of account in which X’s first accounting period begins”.
- (11) After subsection (6) insert – 30
  - “(6A) A revocation event also occurs in a period of account (whether or not a period to which subsection (6) applies) if, at any time during that period, X ceases to be a UK resident investment company.”
- (12) In subsection (7)(a), for “section 9A(2)(a)” substitute “section 9A”.
- (13) In section 17 (interpretation of Chapter), for subsection (4) substitute – 35
  - “(4) References in this Chapter to the functional currency of a company or of part of a company’s business are references to the currency of the primary economic environment in which the company or part operates.”
- (14) This section has effect in relation to periods of account beginning on or after 1 January 2016. 40

- (15) Subsections (16) and (17) apply if a period of account of a company (“the straddling period of account) begins before, and ends on or after, 1 January 2016.
- (16) It is to be assumed, for the purposes of this section, that the straddling period of account consists of two separate periods of account – 5
- (a) the first beginning with the straddling period of account and ending immediately before 1 January 2016, and
  - (b) the second beginning with that day and ending with the straddling period of account.
- (17) For the purposes of this section, it is to be assumed – 10
- (a) that the company prepares its accounts for each of the two periods in the same currency, and otherwise on the same basis, as it prepares its accounts for the straddling period of account, and
  - (b) that if the accounts for the straddling period of account, in accordance with generally accepted accounting practice, identify a currency as the company’s functional currency, the accounts for each of the two periods do likewise. 15

### 34 Group relief

- (1) In section 133 of CTA 2010 (claims for group relief: consortium conditions 2 and 3) – 20
- (a) in subsection (1) –
    - (i) at the end of paragraph (e) insert “and”, and
    - (ii) omit paragraph (g) and the “and” before it,
  - (b) in subsection (2) –
    - (i) at the end of paragraph (e) insert “and”, and 25
    - (ii) omit paragraph (g) and the “and” before it, and
  - (c) omit subsections (5) to (8).
- (2) Accordingly – 30
- (a) in section 129(2) of CTA 2010 for “134A” substitute “134”,
  - (b) in section 130(2) of that Act –
    - (i) in paragraph (c), for “and (3) to (8)” substitute “, (3) and (4)”, and
    - (ii) in paragraph (d), for “(8)” substitute “(4)”,
  - (c) omit section 134A of that Act, and
  - (d) in Schedule 6 to the Finance (No. 3) Act 2010, omit paragraphs 4(4) and 5. 35
- (3) The amendments made by this section have effect in relation to accounting periods beginning on or after 10 December 2014.

### 35 CFC charge: abolition of relief

- (1) In Part 9A of TIOPA 2010 (controlled foreign companies), omit section 371UD (relief against sum charged). 40
- (2) Accordingly, omit the following provisions –
- (a) in CTA 2010, section 398D(6) and (6A);
  - (b) in FA 2012, in Schedule 20, paragraph 38;
  - (c) in FA 2015, in Schedule 2, paragraphs 6 and 8;

- (d) in the Corporation Tax (Northern Ireland) Act 2015, in Schedule 2, paragraph 3.
- (3) The amendments made by this section have effect in relation to accounting periods of CFCs beginning on or after 8 July 2015.
- (4) Subsection (5) applies where a CFC has an accounting period beginning before 8 July 2015 and ending on or after that date (“the straddling period”). 5
- (5) For the purposes of determining the relief to which a chargeable company in relation to the straddling period is entitled under section 371UD of TIOPA 2010, or on the making of a claim would be so entitled –
- (a) so much of the straddling period as falls before 8 July 2015, and so much of that period as falls on or after that date, are treated as separate accounting periods, and 10
- (b) any amount charged on the company in accordance with section 371BC of TIOPA 2010 in relation to the straddling period is to be apportioned on a just and reasonable basis between those two periods. 15
- (6) In this section, “CFC”, “accounting period” in relation to a CFC, and “chargeable company” have the same meanings as in Part 9A of TIOPA 2010.

### 36 CFC charge: tax avoidance involving carried-forward losses

- (1) Part 14B of CTA 2010 (tax avoidance involving carried-over losses) is amended as follows. 20
- (2) In section 730G (disallowance of deductions for relevant carried-forward losses), in subsection (4), after “a relevant corporation tax advantage” insert “or a relevant CFC charge advantage”.
- (3) In that section, after subsection (5) insert –
- “(5A) In this section “relevant CFC charge advantage” means a CFC charge advantage involving the deductible amount mentioned in subsection (3).” 25
- (4) In that section, in subsection (7) –
- (a) in paragraph (a) –
- (i) for “the” substitute “any”; 30
- (ii) omit the final “and”;
- (b) after that paragraph insert –
- “(aa) any relevant CFC charge advantage, and”;
- (c) in paragraph (b), at the end insert “or the relevant CFC charge advantage”. 35
- (5) In that section, in subsection (8), after “subsection (7)(a)” insert “, (aa)”.
- (6) In section 730H (interpretation), in subsection (1), after the definition of “arrangements” insert –
- ““CFC charge advantage” means the avoidance or reduction of a charge or assessment to a charge under Part 9A of TIOPA 2010 (controlled foreign companies);” 40
- (7) The amendments made by this section have effect for the purposes of calculating the taxable total profits of companies for accounting periods beginning on or after after 8 July 2015.

- (8) For the purposes of the amendments made by this section, where a company has an accounting period beginning before 8 July 2015 and ending on or after that date (“the straddling period”) –
- (a) so much of the straddling period as falls before 8 July 2015, and so much of that period as falls on or after that date, are treated as separate accounting periods, and 5
  - (b) any amounts brought into account for the purposes of calculating the taxable total profits of the company for the straddling period are to be apportioned to the two separate accounting periods – 10
    - (i) in accordance with section 1172 of CTA 2010, and
    - (ii) if that method would produce a result that is unjust or unreasonable, on a just and reasonable basis.

*Income tax and corporation tax*

**37 Changes in trading stock not made in course of trade**

- (1) In section 161 of CTA 2009 (changes in trading stock: transfer pricing rules to take precedence), after subsection (1) insert – 15
- “(1A) Subsection (1B) applies in relation to a disposal or acquisition if –
- (a) by virtue of subsection (1), section 159 or 160 does not apply, and
  - (b) the market value amount is greater than the Part 4 TIOPA amount. 20
- (1B) An amount equal to the market value amount less the Part 4 TIOPA amount is to be brought into account in calculating the profits of the trade (in addition to the Part 4 TIOPA amount).
- (1C) In subsections (1A) and (1B) – 25
- “market value amount” means the amount referred to in section 159(2)(a) or 160(2)(a);
  - “Part 4 TIOPA amount” means the amount which, following the application of Part 4 of TIOPA 2010 to the relevant consideration, is brought into account in respect of the relevant consideration in calculating the profits of the trade.” 30
- (2) In section 172F of ITTOIA 2005 (changes in trading stock: transfer pricing rules to take precedence), after subsection (1) insert –
- “(1A) Subsection (1B) applies in relation to a disposal or acquisition if –
- (a) by virtue of subsection (1), section 172D or 172E does not apply, and 35
  - (b) the market value amount is greater than the Part 4 TIOPA amount.
- (1B) An amount equal to the market value amount less the Part 4 TIOPA amount is to be brought into account in calculating the profits of the trade (in addition to the Part 4 TIOPA amount). 40
- (1C) In subsections (1A) and (1B) –
- “market value amount” means the amount referred to in section 172D(2)(a) or 172E(2)(a);

“Part 4 TIOPA amount” means the amount which, following the application of Part 4 of TIOPA 2010 to the relevant consideration, is brought into account in respect of the relevant consideration in calculating the profits of the trade.”

- (3) The amendments made by this section apply in relation to a disposal or acquisition made on or after 8 July 2015, unless it is made pursuant to an obligation, under a contract, that was unconditional before that date. 5
- (4) For the purposes of subsection (3), an obligation is “unconditional” if it may not be varied or extinguished by the exercise of a right (whether under the contract or otherwise). 10

### 38 Valuation of trading stock on cessation

- (1) In section 162 of CTA 2009 (valuation of trading stock on cessation), after subsection (2) (transfer pricing rules to take precedence) insert –
- “(2A) Subsection (2B) applies if –
- (a) by virtue of subsection (2), no valuation of the stock under this Chapter is required, and 15
  - (b) the market value of the stock is greater than the Part 4 TIOPA amount.
- (2B) An amount equal to the market value of the stock less the Part 4 TIOPA amount is to be brought into account in calculating the profits of the trade (in addition to the Part 4 TIOPA amount). 20
- (2C) In subsections (2A) and (2B) –
- “market value”, in relation to stock, is the value the stock would have been determined to have if it had been valued in accordance with sections 164 to 167, and 25
  - “Part 4 TIOPA amount” is the amount which, following the application of Part 4 of TIOPA 2010 in relation to the provision referred to in subsection (2), is brought into account in respect of that provision in calculating the profits of the trade.”
- (2) In section 173 of ITTOIA 2005 (valuation of trading stock on cessation), after subsection (2) (transfer pricing rules to take precedence) insert – 30
- “(2A) Subsection (2B) applies if –
- (a) by virtue of subsection (2), no valuation of the stock under this Chapter is required, and
  - (b) the market value of the stock is greater than the Part 4 TIOPA amount. 35
- (2B) An amount equal to the market value of the stock less the Part 4 TIOPA amount is to be brought into account in calculating the profits of the trade (in addition to the Part 4 TIOPA amount).
- (2C) In subsections (2A) and (2B) – 40
- “market value”, in relation to stock, is the value the stock would have been determined to have if it had been valued in accordance with sections 175 to 178, and
  - “Part 4 TIOPA amount” is the amount which, following the application of Part 4 of TIOPA 2010 in relation to the provision 45

referred to in subsection (2), is brought into account in respect of that provision in calculating the profits of the trade.”

- (3) The amendments made by this section apply in relation to a cessation of trade on or after 8 July 2015.

### **39 Transfer of intangible assets not at arm’s length** 5

- (1) In section 846 of CTA 2009 (transfers of intangible assets not at arm’s length), after subsection (1) insert –

“(1A) Subsection (1B) applies in relation to the transfer of an intangible asset where –

- (a) by virtue of subsection (1), section 845 does not apply, and 10  
 (b) the market value of the asset is greater than the Part 4 TIOPA amount.

(1B) An amount equal to the market value of the asset less the Part 4 TIOPA amount is to be brought into account for the purposes of corporation tax in relation to the transfer (in addition to the Part 4 TIOPA amount). 15

(1C) In subsections (1A) and (1B) –

“market value”, in relation to an asset, has the meaning given in section 845(5);

“Part 4 TIOPA amount” means the amount which, following the application of Part 4 of TIOPA 2010 in relation to the consideration for the transfer, is brought into account in respect of the consideration for the purposes of corporation tax.” 20

- (2) The amendment made by this section applies in relation to a transfer which takes place on or after 8 July 2015, unless it takes place pursuant to an obligation, under a contract, that was unconditional before that date. 25

- (3) For the purposes of subsection (2), an obligation is “unconditional” if it may not be varied or extinguished by the exercise of a right (whether under the contract or otherwise).

### *Income tax and capital gains tax*

### **40 Carried interest** 30

- (1) In Part 3 of TCGA 1992 (individuals, partnerships, trusts and collective investment schemes etc), after section 103K insert –

#### “CHAPTER 5

#### CARRIED INTEREST

### **103KA Carried interest** 35

(1) This section applies where –

- (a) an individual (“A”) performs investment management services directly or indirectly in respect of an investment scheme under arrangements involving at least one partnership, and  
 (b) carried interest arises to A under the arrangements. 40

- (2) If the carried interest arises to A in connection with the disposal of one or more assets of the partnership or partnerships –
- (a) the amount of the chargeable gain accruing to A on the disposal in respect of the carried interest is to be treated as an amount equal to the amount of the carried interest less any permitted deductions, and 5
  - (b) the chargeable gain is to be treated as accruing to A at the time the carried interest arises.
- (3) If the carried interest arises to A in circumstances other than those specified in subsection (2), a chargeable gain of an amount equal to the amount of the carried interest less any permitted deductions is to be treated as accruing to A at the time the carried interest arises. 10
- (4) Subsections (2) and (3) do not apply in relation to carried interest to the extent that –
- (a) it is brought into account in calculating the profits of a trade of A for the purposes of income tax for any tax year, or 15
  - (b) it constitutes a co-investment repayment or return.
- (5) For the purpose of subsections (2) and (3) “permitted deductions” in relation to A means such parts of the amounts specified in subsection (6) as is just and reasonable. 20
- (6) The amounts referred to in subsection (5) are –
- (a) the amount of any consideration in money given to the scheme by or on behalf of A wholly and exclusively for entering into the arrangements referred to in subsection (1)(a) (but not consideration in respect of co-investments), 25
  - (b) any amount that constituted earnings of A under Chapter 1 of Part 3 of ITEPA 2003 (earnings) in respect of A’s entering into those arrangements (but not any earnings in respect of co-investments or any amount of exempt income within the meaning of section 8 of that Act), and 30
  - (c) any amount which, by reason of events occurring no later than the time the carried interest arises, counts as income of A under the enactments referred to in section 119A(3) in respect of A’s participation in the arrangements referred to in subsection (1)(a) (and section 119A(5) applies for the purposes of this paragraph as it applies for the purposes of section 119A(4)). 35
- For the purposes of this Act no other deduction may be made from the amount of the carried interest referred to in subsection (2) or (3).
- (7) Where the carried interest arises to A by virtue of his or her acquisition of a right to it from another individual for consideration given in money by or on behalf of A, the amount of the chargeable gain accruing to A under subsection (2) or (3) is, on the making of a claim by A under this subsection, to be regarded as reduced by the amount of the consideration. 40
- (8) In this section – 45
- “co-investment”, in relation to A, means an investment made directly or indirectly by A in the scheme, where there is no return on the investment which is not an arm’s length return within the meaning of section 809EZB(2) of ITA 2007;

“co-investment repayment or return” means a repayment in whole or in part of, or a return on, a co-investment;  
 “trade” includes profession or vocation.

### **103KB Carried interest: consideration on disposal etc of right**

- |     |  |    |
|-----|--|----|
| (1) | For the purposes of section 103KA, consideration received or receivable by an individual for the disposal, loss or cancellation of a right to carried interest is to be treated as carried interest arising to that individual at the time of the disposal, loss or cancellation.                                  | 5  |
| (2) | But subsection (1) does not apply if and to the extent that the consideration is a disguised fee arising to the individual for the purposes of section 809EZA of ITA 2007.   | 10 |
| (3) | Subsection (4) applies where, for the purposes of determining the amount of consideration received or receivable by an individual as specified in subsection (1), the market value of a right to carried interest falls to be determined.  | 15 |
| (4) | If –   |    |
|     | (a) there is any contract, agreement, arrangement or condition which makes provision to which subsection (5), (6) or (7) applies, and  |    |
|     | (b) the market value of the right to carried interest is less than it would be but for that provision,   | 20 |
|     | that provision is to be disregarded in determining the market value.   |    |
| (5) | This subsection applies to provision under which –   |    |
|     | (a) there will be a transfer, reversion or forfeiture of the right to carried interest if certain circumstances do or do not arise,  | 25 |
|     | (b) as a result of the transfer, reversion or forfeiture the person by whom the right to carried interest is held will cease to be beneficially entitled to it, and  |    |
|     | (c) that person will not be entitled on the transfer, reversion or forfeiture to receive in respect of the right to carried interest an amount of at least its market value (determined as if there were no provision for transfer, reversion or forfeiture) at the time of the transfer, reversion or forfeiture. | 30 |
| (6) | This subsection applies to provision under which there is a restriction on –   | 35 |
|     | (a) the freedom of the person by whom the right to carried interest is held to dispose of it or proceeds of its sale,  |    |
|     | (b) the right of that person to retain the right to carried interest or proceeds of its sale, or   |    |
|     | (c) any other right conferred by the right to carried interest,  | 40 |
|     | not being provision to which subsection (5) applies.   |    |
| (7) | This subsection applies to provision under which the disposal or retention of the right to carried interest, or the exercise of a right conferred by it, may result in a disadvantage to –   |    |
|     | (a) the person by whom the right to carried interest is held,  | 45 |
|     | (b) any person connected with that person,   |    |
|     | not being provision to which subsection (5) or (6) applies.  |    |

- (8) For the purposes of subsection (7) whether a person is connected with another person is to be determined in accordance with section 993 of ITA 2007.

**103KC Carried interest: foreign chargeable gains**

In a case where section 103KA applies, a chargeable gain accruing or treated as accruing to an individual in respect of carried interest is a foreign chargeable gain within the meaning of section 12 only to the extent that the individual performs the services referred to in section 103KA(1)(a) outside the United Kingdom. 5

**103KD Carried interest: anti-avoidance**

In determining whether section 103KA applies in relation to an individual, no regard is to be had to any arrangements the main purpose, or one of the main purposes, of which is to secure that that section does not to any extent apply in relation to – 10

- (a) the individual, or 15  
(b) the individual and one or more other individuals.

**103KE Carried interest: avoidance of double taxation**

- (1) This section applies where –  
(a) capital gains tax is charged on an individual by virtue of section 103KA in respect of any carried interest, 20  
(b) at any time, tax (whether income tax or another tax) charged on the individual in relation to that carried interest has been paid by him or her, and  
(c) any sum so charged is not a permissible deduction under section 103KA(6)(b) or (c). 25
- (2) In order to avoid a double charge to tax, the individual may make a claim for one or more consequential adjustments to be made in respect of the capital gains tax charged as mentioned in subsection (1)(a).
- (3) On a claim under this section an officer of Revenue and Customs must make such of the consequential adjustments claimed (if any) as are just and reasonable. 30
- (4) The value of any consequential adjustments made must not exceed the lesser of –  
(a) the capital gains tax charged as mentioned in subsection (1)(a), and 35  
(b) the tax charged as mentioned in subsection (1)(b).
- (5) Consequential adjustments may be made –  
(a) in respect of any period,  
(b) by way of an assessment, the modification of an assessment, the amendment of a claim, or otherwise, and 40  
(c) despite any time limit imposed by or under an enactment.

**103KF Interpretation of Chapter 5**

- (1) For the purposes of this Chapter, carried interest “arises” to an individual if, and only if, it arises to him or her for the purposes of Chapter 5E of Part 13 of ITA 2007. 45

- (2) In this Chapter –
- “arrangements” has the same meaning as in Chapter 5E of Part 13 of ITA 2007 (see 809EZE of that Act);
  - “carried interest”, in relation to arrangements referred to in section 103KA(1)(a), has the same meaning as in section 809EZB of ITA 2007 (see sections 809EZE and 809EZD of that Act);
  - “investment scheme” and “investment management services” have the same meanings as in Chapter 5E of Part 13 of that Act (see sections 809EZA(6) and 809EZE of that Act).”
- (2) The amendment made by subsection (1) has effect in relation to carried interest arising on or after 8 July 2015 under any arrangements, unless the carried interest arises in connection with the disposal of an asset or assets of a partnership or partnerships before that date. 10
- (3) But in relation to subsections (3) to (8) of section 103KB of TCGA 1992 as inserted by subsection (1), subsection (2) has effect as if the reference to 8 July 2015 (and the reference to “that date”) were a reference to 15 July 2015. 15
- (4) In subsection (2), “arise”, “arrangements” and “carried interest” have the same meanings as in Chapter 5 of Part 3 of TCGA 1992 (as inserted by subsection (1) of this section).
- 41 Disguised investment management fees** 20
- (1) In section 809EZB of ITA 2007 (disguised investment management fees: meaning of “management fee”), after subsection (2) insert –
- “(2A) For the purposes of subsection (2)(b), the return on the investment is reasonably comparable to the return to external investors on the investments referred to in subsection (2)(a) if (and only if) – 25
- (a) the rate of return on the investment is reasonably comparable to the rate of return to external investors on those investments, and
  - (b) any other factors relevant to determining the size of the return on the investment are reasonably comparable to the factors determining the size of the return to external investors on those investments.” 30
- (2) The amendment made by this section has effect in relation to sums arising on or after 8 July 2015 (whenever the arrangements under which the sums arise were made). 35
- (3) In subsection (2), “arise” has the same meaning as it has for the purposes of Chapter 5E of Part 13 of ITA 2007.

## PART 5

### EXCISE DUTIES AND OTHER TAXES

#### *Vehicle excise duty*

## 42 Vehicle excise duty

- (1) VERA 1994 is amended as follows.

- (2) In Schedule 1 (annual rates of duty) –
- (a) in the heading to Part 1A (light passenger vehicles: graduated rates of duty) after “VEHICLES” insert “REGISTERED BEFORE 1 APRIL 2017”;
  - (b) in paragraph 1A (vehicles to which Part 1A applies) in sub-paragraph (1)(a) for “on or after 1 March 2001” substitute “, after 28 February 2001 but before 1 April 2017”;
  - (c) after Part 1A insert –

“PART 1AA

LIGHT PASSENGER VEHICLES REGISTERED ON OR AFTER 1 APRIL 2017

*Vehicles to which this Part applies etc* 10

- 1GA(1) This Part of this Schedule applies to a vehicle which –
- (a) is first registered, under this Act or under the law of a country or territory outside the United Kingdom, on or after 1 April 2017, and
  - (b) is so registered on the basis of an EU certificate of conformity or UK approval certificate that –
    - (i) identifies the vehicle as having been approved as a light passenger vehicle, and
    - (ii) specifies a CO<sub>2</sub> emissions figure in terms of grams per kilometre driven.
- (2) In sub-paragraph (1)(b)(i) a “light passenger vehicle” has the meaning given by paragraph 1A(2).
- (3) The following provisions of Part 1A of this Schedule apply for the purposes of this Part of this Schedule as they apply for the purposes of that Part –
- (a) paragraph 1A(3) and (4) (meaning of “the applicable CO<sub>2</sub> emissions figure”);
  - (b) paragraph 1A(5) (effect of subsequent modifications);
  - (c) paragraphs 1C and 1D (the reduced rate and the standard rate);
  - (d) paragraph 1G (meaning of “EU certificate of conformity” and “UK approval certificate”).

*Exemption from paying duty on first vehicle licence for certain vehicles*

- 1GB(1) No vehicle excise duty shall be paid on the first vehicle licence for a vehicle to which this Part of this Schedule applies if the vehicle is within sub-paragraph (2) or (3). 35
- (2) A vehicle is within this sub-paragraph if –
- (a) its applicable CO<sub>2</sub> emissions figure is 0 g/km, and
  - (b) it is not an exempt vehicle by reason of paragraph 25(4) of Schedule 2 (because of sub-paragraph (5) of that paragraph). 40
- (3) A vehicle is within this sub-paragraph if –
- (a) its applicable CO<sub>2</sub> emissions figure exceeds 0 g/km but does not exceed 50 g/km, and
  - (b) condition A, B or C in paragraph 1C is met.

*Graduated rates of duty payable on first vehicle licence*

- 1GC For the purpose of determining the rate at which vehicle excise duty is to be paid on the first vehicle licence for a vehicle to which this Part of this Schedule applies, the annual rate of duty applicable to the vehicle shall be determined in accordance with the following table by reference to – 5
- (a) the applicable CO<sub>2</sub> emissions figure, and
  - (b) whether the vehicle qualifies for the reduced rate of duty or is liable to the standard rate of duty.

<i>CO<sub>2</sub> emissions figure</i>		<i>Rate</i>		
<i>(1)</i>	<i>(2)</i>	<i>(3)</i>	<i>(4)</i>	
<i>Exceeding g/km</i>	<i>Not exceeding g/km</i>	<i>Reduced rate</i>	<i>Standard rate</i>	
0	50	–	10	
50	75	15	25	15
75	90	90	100	
90	100	110	120	
100	110	130	140	
110	130	150	160	
130	150	190	200	20
150	170	490	500	
170	190	790	800	
190	225	1190	1200	
225	255	1690	1700	
255	–	1990	2000	25

*Rates of duty payable on any other vehicle licence for vehicle*

- 1GD(1) For the purpose of determining the rate at which vehicle excise duty is to be paid on any other vehicle licence for a vehicle to which this Part of this Schedule applies, the annual rate of vehicle excise applicable to the vehicle is – 30
- (a) the reduced rate of £130, if the vehicle qualifies for the reduced rate, or
  - (b) the standard rate of £140, if the vehicle is liable to the standard rate.
- (2) But sub-paragraph (1) does not apply where paragraph 1GE(2) or (4) applies. 35

*Higher rates of duty: vehicles with a price exceeding £40,000*

- 1GE (1) Sub-paragraph (2) applies for the purpose of determining the rate at which vehicle excise duty is to be paid on any other vehicle licence for a vehicle to which this Part applies if –
- (a) the price of the vehicle exceeds £40,000, 5
  - (b) the vehicle was first registered, under this Act or under the law of a country or territory outside the United Kingdom, less than six years before the date on which the licence has effect, and
  - (c) the vehicle’s applicable CO<sub>2</sub> emissions figure exceeds 0 g/km. 10
- (2) The annual rate of vehicle excise duty applicable to the vehicle is –
- (a) £440, if the vehicle qualifies for the reduced rate, or
  - (b) £450, if the vehicle is liable to the standard rate.
- (3) Sub-paragraph (4) applies for the purpose of determining the rate at which vehicle excise duty is to be paid on any other vehicle licence for a vehicle to which this Part applies if – 15
- (a) the price of the vehicle exceeds £40,000;
  - (b) the vehicle was first registered, under this Act or under the law of a country or territory outside the United Kingdom, less than six years before the date on which the licence has effect, and 20
  - (c) the vehicle’s applicable CO<sub>2</sub> emissions figure is 0 g/km.
- (4) The annual rate of vehicle excise duty applicable to the vehicle is £310. 25

*Calculating the price of a vehicle*

- 1GF (1) For the purposes of paragraph 1GE(1)(a) and (3)(a) the price of a vehicle is –
- (a) in a case where the vehicle has a list price, the sum of – 30
    - (i) that price, and
    - (ii) the price of any non-standard accessory which is attached to the vehicle when it is first registered under this Act, or
  - (b) in a case where the vehicle does not have a list price, its notional price. 35
- (2) The reference in sub-paragraph (1)(a)(ii) to the price of a non-standard accessory is to –
- (a) its list price, if it has one, or
  - (b) its notional price, if it has no list price.
- (3) Sections 123, 124, 125 and 127 to 130 of the Income Tax (Earnings and Pensions) Act 2003 apply for the purpose of defining terms used in this paragraph as they apply for the purpose of defining terms used in Chapter 6 of Part 3 of that Act, but with the modifications specified in sub-paragraph (4). 40
- (4) The modifications are as follows – 45
- (a) references to a car are to be read as references to a vehicle;

- (b) references to relevant taxes are to be read as not including references to vehicle excise duty;
- (c) in section 124(1)(f) for the words from “qualifying” to the end substitute “accessories attached to the vehicle when it was first registered under VERA 1994”; 5
- (d) in section 125 omit subsection (1) and (2)(a);
- (e) in section 127 –
- (i) in subsection (1) omit “initial extra”;
- (ii) omit subsection (2).”
- (3) In Schedule 2 (exempt vehicles) – 10
- (a) in paragraph 20G (electrically propelled vehicles) –
- (i) the existing provision becomes sub-paragraph (1);
- (ii) after that sub-paragraph insert –
- “(2) But a vehicle is not an exempt vehicle by reason of this paragraph if – 15
- (a) it is a vehicle to which Part 1AA of Schedule 1 applies (light passenger vehicles registered on or after 1 April 2017), and
- (b) its price exceeds £40,000.
- (3) Paragraph 1GF of Schedule 1 (calculating the price of a vehicle) applies for the purposes of sub-paragraph (2)(b).”;
- (b) in paragraph 25 (light passenger vehicles with low CO<sub>2</sub> emissions) after sub-paragraph (3) insert –
- “(4) A vehicle is an exempt vehicle if –
- (a) it is a vehicle to which Part 1AA of Schedule 1 applies, 25
- and
- (b) it has an applicable CO<sub>2</sub> emissions figure (as defined in paragraph 1A(3) and (4) of that Schedule) of 0 g/km.
- (5) But a vehicle is not an exempt vehicle by reason of sub-paragraph (4) if – 30
- (a) its price exceeds £40,000, and
- (b) less than six years have passed since it was first registered (whether under this Act or under the law of a country or territory outside the United Kingdom). 35
- (6) Paragraph 1GF of Schedule 1 (calculating the price of a vehicle) applies for the purposes of sub-paragraph (5)(a).”

*Insurance premium tax***43 Insurance premium tax: standard rate**

- (1) In section 51(2)(b) of FA 1994 (standard rate of insurance premium tax), for “6 per cent” substitute “9.5 per cent”. 40
- (2) The amendment made by subsection (1) has effect in relation to a premium falling to be regarded for the purposes of Part 3 of FA 1994 as received under a taxable insurance contract by an insurer on or after 1 November 2015.

- (3) The amendment made by subsection (1) does not have effect in relation to a premium which –
- (a) is in respect of a contract made before 1 November 2015, and
  - (b) falls to be regarded for the purposes of Part 3 of FA 1994 as received under the contract by the insurer before 1 March 2016 by virtue of regulations under section 68 of that Act (special accounting schemes). 5
- (4) Subsection (3) does not apply in relation to a premium which –
- (a) is an additional premium under a contract,
  - (b) falls to be regarded for the purposes of Part 3 of FA 1994 as received under the contract by the insurer on or after 1 November 2015 by virtue of regulations under section 68 of that Act, and 10
  - (c) is in respect of a risk which was not covered by the contract before that date.
- (5) In the application of sections 67A to 67C of FA 1994 (announced increase in rate) in relation to the increase made by this section – 15
- (a) the announcement for the purposes of sections 67A(1) and 67B(1) is to be taken to have been made on 8 July 2015,
  - (b) the date of the change is 1 November 2015, and
  - (c) the concessionary date is 1 March 2016.

*Aggregates levy* 20

**44 Aggregates levy: restoration of exemptions**

- (1) The provisions of Part 2 of FA 2001 (aggregates levy) that were amended or repealed by section 94 of FA 2014 (removal of certain exemptions with effect from 1 April 2014) have effect, and are to be treated as having had effect at all times on or after 1 April 2014, as if the amendments and repeals made by that section had not been made. 25
- (2) Accordingly, sections 94 and 95 of FA 2014 are repealed.
- (3) Part 2 of FA 2001, as amended by subsection (1), is further amended in accordance with subsections (4) and (5).
- (4) In section 17 (meaning of “aggregate” and “taxable aggregate”), in each of subsections (3)(f) and (4)(a) – 30
- (a) after “lignite,” insert “or”, and
  - (b) omit “or shale”.
- (5) In section 18(2) (meaning of “exempt process”), after paragraph (c) insert – 35
- “(ca) in the case of aggregate consisting of shale, any process consisting of a use of the shale that –
    - (i) is not a use of it as material or support in the construction or improvement of any structure, and
    - (ii) is not mixing it with anything as part of the process of producing mortar, concrete, tarmacadam, coated roadstone or any similar construction material.” 40
- (6) The repeal of section 94 of FA 2014 is to be treated as having come into force on 1 August 2015, and the amendments made by subsections (3) to (5) are to be treated as having come into force on 1 April 2014.

*Climate change levy***45 CCL: removal of exemption for electricity from renewable sources**

In paragraph 19 of Schedule 6 to FA 2000 (climate change levy: exemption for electricity from renewable sources), in sub-paragraph (3), before paragraph (a) insert –

“(za) it is generated before 1 August 2015,”.

5

**PART 6**

## ADMINISTRATION AND ENFORCEMENT

**46 International agreements to improve compliance: client notification**

(1) Section 222 of FA 2013 (international agreements to improve tax compliance) is amended as follows. 10

(2) In subsection (2), in paragraph (c), after “purposes” (but before the closing bracket) insert “and client notification obligations”.

(3) In subsection (2), after paragraph (c) insert –

“(ca) impose client notification obligations on specified relevant persons;”.

15

(4) After subsection (2) insert –

“(2A) For the purposes of subsection (2)(c) and (ca) a “client notification obligation” is an obligation to give specified information to –

- (a) clients, or
- (b) specified clients.

20

(2B) In subsection (2A) the reference to an obligation to give specified information includes –

- (a) any obligation to give the information –
  - (i) in a specified form or manner;
  - (ii) at a specified time or specified times;
- (b) in the case of a relevant financial entity or relevant person which is a body corporate, an obligation to require a person of which it has control to give the information.”

25

(5) In subsection (4), at the appropriate places insert – 30

““client” includes –

- (a) any client or customer, and
- (b) any former client or customer;”;

““control” is to be construed in accordance with section 1124 of CTA 2010;”;

35

““relevant person” means –

- (a) a tax adviser (as defined by section 272(5) of FA 2014), and
- (b) any other person who in the course of business –
  - (i) gives advice to another person about that person’s financial or legal affairs, or

40

- (ii) provides other financial or legal services to another person.”

**47 Enforcement by deduction from accounts**

- (1) Schedule 8 contains provision about the enforcement of debts owed to the Commissioners for Her Majesty’s Revenue and Customs by making deductions from accounts held with deposit-takers. 5
- (2) The Treasury may, by regulations made by statutory instrument, make consequential, incidental or supplementary provision in connection with any provision made by that Schedule.
- (3) Regulations under subsection (2) may amend, repeal or revoke any enactment (whenever passed or made). 10
- (4) “Enactment” includes an enactment contained in subordinate legislation within the meaning of the Interpretation Act 1978.
- (5) A statutory instrument containing (whether alone or with other provision) provision amending or repealing an Act may not be made unless a draft of the instrument has been laid before and approved by a resolution of the House of Commons. 15
- (6) Any other statutory instrument containing regulations under subsection (2) is subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of the House of Commons.

**48 Rate of interest applicable to judgment debts etc in taxation matters** 20

- (1) This section applies if a sum payable to or by the Commissioners under a judgment or order given or made in any court proceedings relating to a taxation matter (a “tax-related judgment debt”) carries interest as a result of a relevant enactment.
- (2) The “relevant enactments” are— 25
  - (a) section 17 of the Judgments Act 1838 (judgment debts to carry interest), and
  - (b) any order under section 74 of the County Courts Act 1984 (interest on judgment debts etc).
- (3) The relevant enactment is to have effect in relation to the tax-related judgment debt as if for the rate specified in section 17(1) of the Judgments Act 1838 and any other rate specified in an order under section 74 of the County Courts Act 1984 there were substituted— 30
  - (a) in the case of a sum payable to the Commissioners, the late payment interest rate provided for in regulations made by the Treasury under section 103(1) of FA 2009, and 35
  - (b) in the case of a sum payable by the Commissioners, the special repayment rate.
- (4) Subsection (3) does not affect any power of the court under the relevant enactment to prevent any sum from carrying interest or to provide for a rate of interest which is lower than (and incapable of exceeding) that for which the subsection provides. 40
- (5) If section 44A of the Administration of Justice Act 1970 (interest on judgment debts expressed otherwise than in sterling), or any corresponding provision

- made under section 74 of the County Courts Act 1984 in relation to the county court, applies to a tax-related judgment debt –
- (a) subsection (3) does not apply, but
  - (b) the court may not specify in an order under section 44A of the Administration of Justice Act 1970, or under any provision corresponding to that section which has effect under section 74 of the County Courts Act 1984, an interest rate which exceeds (or is capable of exceeding) –
    - (i) in the case of a sum payable to the Commissioners, the rate mentioned in subsection (3)(a), or
    - (ii) in the case of a sum payable by the Commissioners, the special repayment rate.
- (6) The “special repayment rate” is the percentage per annum given by the formula –
- $$\text{BR} + 2$$
- where BR is the official Bank rate determined by the Bank of England Monetary Policy Committee at the operative meeting.
- (7) “The operative meeting”, in relation to the special repayment rate applicable in respect of any day, means the most recent meeting of the Bank of England Monetary Policy Committee apart from any meeting later than the 13th working day before that day.
- (8) The Treasury may by regulations made by statutory instrument –
- (a) repeal subsections (6) and (7), and
  - (b) provide that the “special repayment rate” for the purposes of this section is the rate provided for in the regulations.
- (9) Regulations under subsection (8) –
- (a) may make different provision for different purposes,
  - (b) may either themselves specify a rate of interest or make provision for such a rate to be determined (and to change from time to time) by reference to such rate, or the average of such rates, as may be referred to in the regulations,
  - (c) may provide for rates to be reduced below, or increased above, what they would otherwise be by specified amounts or by reference to specified formulae,
  - (d) may provide for rates arrived at by reference to averages to be rounded up or down,
  - (e) may provide for circumstances in which the alteration of a rate of interest is or is not to take place, and
  - (f) may provide that alterations of rates are to have effect for periods beginning on or after a day determined in accordance with the regulations (“the effective date”) regardless of –
    - (i) the date of the judgment or order in question, and
    - (ii) whether interest begins to run on or after the effective date, or began to run before that date.
- (10) A statutory instrument containing regulations under subsection (8) is subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of the House of Commons.
- (11) To the extent that a tax-related judgment debt consists of an award of costs to or against the Commissioners, the reference in section 24(2) of the Crown

- Proceedings Act 1947 (which relates to interest on costs awarded to or against the Crown) to the rate at which interest is payable upon judgment debts due from or to the Crown is to be read as a reference to the rate at which interest is payable upon tax-related judgment debts.
- (12) This section has effect in relation to interest for periods beginning on or after 8 July 2015, regardless of – 5
- (a) the date of the judgment or order in question, and
  - (b) whether interest begins to run on or after 8 July 2015, or began to run before that date.
- (13) Subsection (14) applies where, at any time during the period beginning with 8 July 2015 and ending immediately before the day on which this Act is passed (“the relevant period”) – 10
- (a) a payment is made in satisfaction of a tax-related judgment debt, and
  - (b) the payment includes interest under a relevant enactment in respect of any part of the relevant period. 15
- (14) The court by which the judgment or order in question was given or made must, on an application made to it under this subsection by the person who made the payment, order the repayment of the amount by which the interest paid under the relevant enactment in respect of days falling within the relevant period exceeds the interest payable under the relevant enactment in respect of those days in accordance with the provisions of this section. 20
- (15) In this section –
- “the Commissioners” means the Commissioners for Her Majesty’s Revenue and Customs;
  - “taxation matter” means anything, other than national insurance contributions, the collection and management of which is the responsibility of the Commissioners (or was the responsibility of the Commissioners of Inland Revenue or Commissioners of Customs and Excise); 25
  - “working day” means any day other than a non-business day as defined in section 92 of the Bills of Exchange Act 1882. 30
- (16) This section extends to England and Wales only.

## PART 7

### FINAL

- 49 Interpretation** 35
- In this Act –
- “CAA 2001” means the Capital Allowances Act 2001,
  - “CTA 2009” means the Corporation Tax Act 2009,
  - “CTA 2010” means the Corporation Tax Act 2010,
  - “FA”, followed by a year, means the Finance Act of that year, 40
  - “IHTA 1984” means the Inheritance Tax Act 1984,
  - “ITA 2007” means the Income Tax Act 2007,
  - “ITEPA 2003” means the Income Tax (Earnings and Pensions) Act 2003,
  - “ITTOIA 2005” means the Income Tax (Trading and Other Income) Act 2005, 45

“TCGA 1992” means the Taxation of Chargeable Gains Act 1992,  
“TIOPA 2010” means the Taxation (International and Other Provisions)  
Act 2010,  
“TMA 1970” means the Taxes Management Act 1970,  
“VATA 1994” means the Value Added Tax Act 1994, and  
“VERA 1994” means the Vehicle Excise and Registration Act 1994.

5

**50 Short title**

This Act may be cited as the Finance (No. 2) Act 2015.

## SCHEDULES

### SCHEDULE 1

Section 11

#### RATE OF TAX CHARGED UNDER CHAPTER 3 OF PART 3 IHTA 1984

- 1 IHTA 1984 is amended as follows.
- 2 After section 62 insert— 5
- “62A Same-day additions**
- (1) For the purposes of this Chapter, there is a “same-day addition”, in relation to a settlement (“settlement A”), if—
- (a) there is a transfer of value by a person as a result of which the value immediately afterwards of the property comprised in settlement A is greater than the value immediately before, 10
  - (b) as a result of the same transfer of value, or as a result of another transfer of value made by that person on the same day, the value immediately afterwards of the property comprised in another settlement (“settlement B”) is greater than the value immediately before, 15
  - (c) that person is the settlor of settlement A and settlement B,
  - (d) at any point in the relevant period, all or any part of the property comprised in settlement A was relevant property, and 20
  - (e) at that point, or at any other point in the relevant period, all or any part of the property comprised in settlement B was relevant property.
- For exceptions, see section 62B.
- (2) Where there is a same-day addition, references in this Chapter to its value are to the difference between the two values mentioned in subsection (1)(b). 25
- (3) “The relevant period” means—
- (a) in the case of settlement A, the period beginning with the commencement of settlement A and ending immediately after the transfer of value mentioned in subsection (1)(a), and 30
  - (b) in the case of settlement B, the period beginning with the commencement of settlement B and ending immediately after the transfer of value mentioned in subsection (1)(b)).
- (4) The transfer or transfers of value mentioned in subsection (1) include a transfer or transfers of value as a result of which property first becomes comprised in settlement A or settlement B; but not if settlements A and B are related settlements. 35

- (5) For the purposes of subsection (1) above, it is immaterial whether the amount of the property comprised in settlement A or settlement B (or neither) was increased as a result of the transfer or transfers of value mentioned in that subsection.

<b>62B Same day additions: exceptions</b>	5
(1) There is not a same-day addition for the purposes of this Chapter if any of the following conditions is met –	
(a) immediately after the transfer of value mentioned in section 62A(1)(a) all the property comprised in settlement A was held for charitable purposes only without limit of time (defined by a date or otherwise),	10
(b) immediately after the transfer of value mentioned in section 62A(1)(b) all the property comprised in settlement B was so held,	
(c) either or each of settlement A and settlement B is a protected settlement (see section 62C), and	15
(d) the transfer of value, or either or each of the transfers of value, mentioned in section 62A(1)(a) and (b) –	
(i) results from the payment of a premium under a contract of life insurance the terms of which provide for premiums to be due at regular intervals of one year or less throughout the contract term, or	20
(ii) is made to fund such a payment.	
(2) If the transfer of value, or each of the transfers of value, mentioned in section 62A(1) is not the transfer of value under section 4 on the settlor's death, there is a same-day addition for the purposes of this Chapter only if conditions A and B are met.	25
(3) Condition A is that –	
(a) the difference between the two values mentioned in section 62A(1)(a) exceeds £5,000, or	30
(b) in a case where there has been more than one transfer of value within section 62A(1)(a) on the same day, the difference between –	
(i) the value of the property comprised in settlement A immediately before the first of those transfers, and	35
(ii) the value of the property comprised in settlement A immediately after the last of those transfers, exceeds £5,000.	
(4) Condition B is that –	
(a) the difference between the two values mentioned in section 62A(1)(b) exceeds £5,000, or	40
(b) in a case where there has been more than one transfer of value within section 62A(1)(b), the difference between –	
(i) the value of the property comprised in settlement B immediately before the first of those transfers, and	45
(ii) the value of the property comprised in settlement B immediately after the last of those transfers, exceeds £5,000.	

## 62C Protected settlements

- (1) For the purposes of this Chapter, a settlement is a “protected settlement” if it commenced before 10 December 2014 and either condition A or condition B is met.
  - (2) Condition A is met if there have been no transfers of value by the settlor on or after 10 December 2014 as a result of which the value of the property comprised in the settlement was increased. 5
  - (3) Condition B is met if –
    - (a) there has been a transfer of value by the settlor on or after 10 December 2014 as a result of which the value of the property comprised in the settlement was increased, and 10
    - (b) that transfer of value was the transfer of value under section 4 on the settlor’s death before 6 April 2017 and it had the result mentioned by reason of a protected testamentary disposition. 15
  - (4) In subsection (3)(b) “protected testamentary disposition” means a disposition effected by provisions of the settlor’s will that at the settlor’s death are, in substance, the same as they were immediately before 10 December 2014.”
- 3 (1) Section 66 (rate of ten-yearly charge) is amended as follows. 20
- (2) In subsection (4) –
    - (a) omit paragraph (b) and the “and” following it,
    - (b) in paragraph (c), before “property” insert “relevant”, and
    - (c) at the end of paragraph (c) insert –
      - “(d) the value of any same-day addition; and 25
      - (e) where –
        - (i) an increase in the value of the property comprised in another settlement is represented by the value of a same-day addition aggregated under paragraph (d) above, and 30
        - (ii) that other settlement is not a related settlement,  
the value immediately after that other settlement commenced of the relevant property then comprised in that other settlement;” 35
  - (3) In subsection (6)(a), for “paragraphs (b) and (c)” substitute “paragraphs (c) to (e)”.
- 4 In section 68 (rate before ten-year anniversary), in subsection (5) –
- (a) in paragraphs (a) and (b), before “property” insert “relevant”, 40
  - (b) omit the “and” following paragraph (b), and
  - (c) for paragraph (c) substitute –
    - “(c) the value, immediately after it became comprised in the settlement, of property which –
      - (i) became comprised in the settlement after the settlement commenced and before the 45

- occasion of the charge under section 65 above,  
and
- (ii) was relevant property immediately after it  
became so comprised,
- whether or not the property has remained relevant  
property comprised in the settlement; 5
- (d) the value, at the time it became (or last became)  
relevant property, of property which –
- (i) was comprised in the settlement immediately  
after the settlement commenced and was not  
then relevant property but became relevant  
property before the occasion of the charge  
under section 65 above, or 10
- (ii) became comprised in the settlement after the  
settlement commenced and before the  
occasion of the charge under section 65 above,  
and was not relevant property immediately  
after it became comprised in the settlement,  
but became relevant property before the  
occasion of the charge under that section, 15
- whether or not the property has remained relevant  
property comprised in the settlement; 20
- (e) the value of any same-day addition; and
- (f) where –
- (i) an increase in the value of the property  
comprised in another settlement is  
represented by the value of a same-day  
addition aggregated under paragraph (e)  
above, and 25
- (ii) that other settlement is not a related  
settlement, 30
- the value immediately after that other settlement  
commenced of the relevant property then comprised  
in that other settlement.”
- 5 (1) Section 69 (rate between ten-year anniversaries) is amended as follows. 35
- (2) In subsection (1), for “subsection (2)” substitute “subsection (2A)”.
- (3) For subsection (2) substitute –
- “(2) Subsection (2A) below applies –
- (a) if, at any time in the period beginning with the most recent  
ten-year anniversary and ending immediately before the  
occasion of the charge under section 65 above (the “relevant  
period”), property has become comprised in the settlement  
which was relevant property immediately after it became so  
comprised, or 40
- (b) if – 45
- (i) at any time in the relevant period, property has  
become comprised in the settlement which was not  
relevant property immediately after it became so  
comprised, and

- (ii) at a later time in the relevant period, that property has become relevant property, or
  - (c) if property which was comprised in the settlement immediately before the relevant period, but was not then relevant property, has at any time during the relevant period become relevant property. 5
- (2A) Whether or not all of the property within any of paragraphs (a) to (c) of subsection (2) above has remained relevant property comprised in the settlement, the rate at which tax is charged under section 65 is to be the appropriate fraction of the rate at which it would last have been charged under section 64 above (apart from section 66(2) above) if – 10
  - (a) immediately before the most recent ten-year anniversary, all of that property had been relevant property comprised in the settlement with a value determined in accordance with subsection (3) below, and 15
  - (b) any same-day addition made on or after the most recent ten-year anniversary had been made immediately before that anniversary.”
- (4) In subsection (3) – 20
  - (a) omit the words from “which either” to the end of paragraph (b), and
  - (b) for “purposes of subsection (2)” substitute “purposes of subsection (2A)”.
- 6 In section 71F (calculation of settlement rate in order to calculate the tax charged under section 71E), in subsection (9)(b), after “in it” insert “which was property to which section 71D above applied”. 25
- 7 The amendments made by this Schedule have effect in relation to occasions on which tax falls to be charged under Chapter 3 of Part 3 of IHTA 1984 on or after the day on which this Act is passed.

## SCHEDULE 2

Section 16 30

### BANK LEVY RATES FOR 2016 TO 2021

#### *Bank levy rate for 2016*

- 1 (1) In paragraph 6 of Schedule 19 to FA 2011 (steps for determining the amount of the bank levy), in sub-paragraph (2) – 35
  - (a) for “0.105%” substitute “0.09%”, and
  - (b) for “0.21%” substitute “0.18%”.
- (2) In paragraph 7 of that Schedule (special provision for chargeable periods falling wholly or partly before 1 April 2015) – 40
  - (a) in sub-paragraph (1) for “1 April 2015” substitute “1 January 2016”;
  - (b) in sub-paragraph (2), in the first column of the table in the substituted Step 7, for “Any time on or after 1 April 2015” substitute “1 April 2015 to 31 December 2015”;
  - (c) at the end of that table add –

“1 January 2016 to 31 December 2016	0.09%	0.18%”;
--	-------	---------

- (d) in the italic heading before paragraph 7, for “1 April 2015” substitute “1 January 2016”. 5
- (3) The amendments made by sub-paragraphs (1) and (2) come into force on 1 January 2016.
- (4) Sub-paragraphs (5) to (10) apply where—
- (a) an amount of the bank levy is treated as if it were an amount of corporation tax chargeable on an entity (“E”) for an accounting period of E, 10
- (b) the chargeable period in respect of which the amount of the bank levy is charged begins before but ends on or after 1 January 2016, and
- (c) under the Instalment Payment Regulations, one or more instalment payments, in respect of the total liability of E for the accounting period, were treated as becoming due and payable before 1 January 2016 (“pre-commencement instalment payments”). 15
- (5) Sub-paragraphs (1) to (3) are to be ignored for the purpose of determining the amount of any pre-commencement instalment payment. 20
- (6) If there is at least one instalment payment, in respect of the total liability of E for the accounting period, which under the Instalment Payment Regulations is treated as becoming due and payable on or after 1 January 2016, the amount of that instalment payment, or the first of them, is to be reduced by the adjustment amount. 25
- (7) “The adjustment amount” is the difference between—
- (a) the aggregate amount of the pre-commencement instalment payments determined in accordance with sub-paragraph (5), and
- (b) the aggregate amount of those instalment payments determined ignoring sub-paragraph (5) (and so taking account of sub-paragraphs (1) to (3)). 30
- (8) In the Instalment Payment Regulations—
- (a) in regulations 6(1)(a), 7(2), 8(1)(a) and (2)(a), 9(5), 10(1), 11(1) and 13, references to regulation 4A, 4B, 4C, 4D, 5, 5A or 5B of those Regulations are to be read as including a reference to sub-paragraphs (4) to (7) (and in regulation 8(2) “that regulation” is to be read accordingly), and 35
- (b) in regulation 9(3), the reference to those Regulations is to be read as including a reference to sub-paragraphs (4) to (7).
- (9) In section 59D of TMA 1970 (general rule as to when corporation tax is due and payable), in subsection (5), the reference to section 59E is to be read as including a reference to sub-paragraphs (4) to (8). 40
- (10) In this paragraph—
- “the chargeable period” is to be construed in accordance with paragraph 4 or (as the case may be) 5 of Schedule 19 to FA 2011; 45

“the Instalment Payment Regulations” means the Corporation Tax (Instalment Payments) Regulations 1998 (S.I. 1998/3175); and references to the total liability of E for an accounting period are to be construed in accordance with regulation 2(3) of the Instalment Payment Regulations.

5

*Bank levy rate for 2017*

- 2 (1) In paragraph 6 of Schedule 19 to FA 2011 (steps for determining the amount of the bank levy), in sub-paragraph (2) –
- (a) for “0.09%” substitute “0.085%”, and
  - (b) for “0.18%” substitute “0.17%”.
- (2) In paragraph 7 of that Schedule (special provision for chargeable periods falling wholly or partly before 1 January 2016) –
- (a) in sub-paragraph (1) for “2016” substitute “2017”;
  - (b) at the end of that table add –

10

“1 January 2017 to 31 December 2017	0.085%	0.17%”;
--	--------	---------

15

- (c) in the italic heading before paragraph 7, for “2016” substitute “2017”.
- (3) The amendments made by this paragraph come into force on 1 January 2017.

20

*Bank levy rate for 2018*

- 3 (1) In paragraph 6 of Schedule 19 to FA 2011 (steps for determining the amount of the bank levy), in sub-paragraph (2) –
- (a) for “0.085%” substitute “0.08%”, and
  - (b) for “0.17%” substitute “0.16%”.
- (2) In paragraph 7 of that Schedule (special provision for chargeable periods falling wholly or partly before 1 January 2017) –
- (a) in sub-paragraph (1) for “2017” substitute “2018”;
  - (b) at the end of that table add –

25

“1 January 2018 to 31 December 2018	0.08%	0.16%”;
--	-------	---------

30

- (c) in the italic heading before paragraph 7, for “2017” substitute “2018”.
- (3) The amendments made by this paragraph come into force on 1 January 2018.

35

*Bank levy rate for 2019*

- 4 (1) In paragraph 6 of Schedule 19 to FA 2011 (steps for determining the amount of the bank levy), in sub-paragraph (2) –
- (a) for “0.08%” substitute “0.075%”, and

- (b) for “0.16%” substitute “0.15%”.
- (2) In paragraph 7 of that Schedule (special provision for chargeable periods falling wholly or partly before 1 January 2018) –
- (a) in sub-paragraph (1) for “2018” substitute “2019”;
- (b) at the end of that table add – 5

“1 January 2019 to 31 December 2019	0.075%	0.15%”;
--	--------	---------

- (c) in the italic heading before paragraph 7, for “2018” substitute “2019”. 10
- (3) The amendments made by this paragraph come into force on 1 January 2019.

*Bank levy rate for 2020*

- 5 (1) In paragraph 6 of Schedule 19 to FA 2011 (steps for determining the amount of the bank levy), in sub-paragraph (2) –
- (a) for “0.075%” substitute “0.07%”, and 15
- (b) for “0.15%” substitute “0.14%”.
- (2) In paragraph 7 of that Schedule (special provision for chargeable periods falling wholly or partly before 1 January 2019) –
- (a) in sub-paragraph (1) for “2019” substitute “2020”;
- (b) at the end of that table add – 20

“1 January 2020 to 31 December 2020	0.07%	0.14%”;
--	-------	---------

- (c) in the italic heading before paragraph 7, for “2019” substitute “2020”. 25
- (3) The amendments made by this paragraph come into force on 1 January 2020.

*Bank levy rate for 2021*

- 6 (1) In paragraph 6 of Schedule 19 to FA 2011 (steps for determining the amount of the bank levy), in sub-paragraph (2) –
- (a) for “0.07%” substitute “0.05%”, and 30
- (b) for “0.14%” substitute “0.1%”.
- (2) In paragraph 7 of that Schedule (special provision for chargeable periods falling wholly or partly before 1 January 2020) –
- (a) in sub-paragraph (1) for “2020” substitute “2021”;
- (b) at the end of that table add – 35

“Any time on or after 1 January 2021	0.05%	0.1%”;
--	-------	--------

- (c) in the italic heading before paragraph 7, for “2020” substitute “2021”.
- (3) The amendments made by this paragraph come into force on 1 January 2021.

SCHEDULE 3

Section 17

BANKING COMPANIES: SURCHARGE

PART 1

5

MAIN PROVISIONS

- 1 In Part 7A of CTA 2010 (banking companies), after Chapter 3 insert—

“CHAPTER 4

SURCHARGE ON BANKING COMPANIES

*Overview*

10

**269D Overview of Chapter**

- (1) This Chapter contains provision for, and in connection with, a surcharge on the profits of banking companies.
- (2) Section 269DA provides for a sum to be charged on the surcharge profits of a banking company, in excess of the company’s surcharge allowance, as if it were an amount of corporation tax. 15
- (3) Section 269DB defines “non-banking group relief” for the purposes of calculating a company’s surcharge profits.
- (4) Section 269DC defines “non-banking or pre-2016 loss relief” for the purposes of calculating a company’s surcharge profits. 20
- (5) Sections 269DD to 269DJ contain provision for, and in connection with, determining a company’s surcharge allowance.
- (6) Sections 269DK and 269DL apply enactments relating to corporation tax to sums charged under section 269DA, modify those enactments and make other provision about administration and double taxation. 25
- (7) Section 269DM contains anti-avoidance provision.
- (8) Section 269DN contains provision about the interpretation of this Chapter.
- (9) Chapter 2 (key definitions) contains provision about the interpretation of this Part that is relevant to this Chapter (see, in particular, section 269B for the meaning of “banking company” and section 269BD for the meaning of “group”). 30

*The surcharge***269DA Surcharge on banking companies**

- (1) If a company is a banking company in relation to an accounting period (a “chargeable accounting period”), a sum equal to 8% of its surcharge profits for the period, so far as they exceed its surcharge allowance for the period, is to be charged on the company as if it were an amount of corporation tax chargeable on the company. 5
- (2) For the purposes of this Chapter, a company’s “surcharge profits” for a chargeable accounting period are –  
TTP + NBGR + NBPLR 10  
where –  
“TTP” is the taxable total profits of the company of the chargeable accounting period;  
“NBGR” is the amount (if any) of non-banking group relief that is given in determining those taxable total profits (see section 269DB); 15  
“NBPLR” is the amount (if any) of non-banking or pre-2016 loss relief (see section 269DC).
- (3) A company’s “surcharge allowance” for a chargeable accounting period is to be determined in accordance with section 269DD where, at any time in that period – 20  
(a) the company is a member of a group, and  
(b) one or more other banking companies are members of that group.
- (4) Otherwise, a company’s “surcharge allowance” for a chargeable accounting period is to be determined in accordance with section 269DI. 25

*Non-banking group relief***269DB Meaning of “non-banking group relief”**

- (1) In section 269DA(2), “non-banking group relief” means group relief that relates to losses or other amounts that the surrendering company has for a surrender period in relation to which it is not – 30  
(a) a banking company, or  
(b) an EEA banking company.
- (2) The surrendering company is an “EEA banking company”, in relation to the surrender period, if – 35  
(a) the group relief relates to surrenderable amounts under Chapter 3 of Part 5 (surrenders made by non-UK resident company resident or trading in the EEA), and  
(b) condition A or B is met. 40
- (3) Condition A is that the surrendering company would be a banking company in relation to the surrender period if –  
(a) it were UK resident,  
(b) any activities carried on by the surrendering company in an EEA territory were carried on in the United Kingdom, 45

- (c) where it would be required to be an authorised person for the purposes of FISMA 2000 in order to carry on those activities, it were an authorised person with permission to carry on those activities, and
  - (d) where those activities consist wholly or mainly of any of the relevant regulated activities described in the provisions mentioned in section 269BB(b) to (f), as a result of carrying on those activities and having such permission it would be an IFPRU 730k firm and a full scope IFPRU investment firm. 5
- (4) Condition B is that the surrendering company is a member of a partnership and the surrendering company would be a banking company if— 10
  - (a) the surrendering company and the partnership were UK resident,
  - (b) any activities carried on by the partnership in an EEA territory were carried on in the United Kingdom, 15
  - (c) where the partnership would be required to be an authorised person for the purposes of FISMA 2000 in order to carry on those activities, the partnership were an authorised person with permission to carry on those activities, and 20
  - (d) where those activities consist wholly or mainly of any of the relevant regulated activities described in the provisions mentioned in section 269BB(b) to (f), as a result of carrying on those activities and having such permission the partnership would be an IFPRU 730k firm and a full scope IFPRU investment firm. 25
- (5) For the purposes of determining whether condition A or B is met, references in section 269B to an accounting period are to be read as references to the surrender period.
- (6) The Treasury may by regulations make provision for, or in connection with, treating companies specified or described in the regulations as being, or as not being, EEA banking companies for the purposes of this section. 30
- (7) In this section—
  - “EEA territory” has the same meaning as in Chapter 3 of Part 5 (see section 112);
  - “surrenderable amounts”, “surrendering company” and “surrender period” have the same meaning as in Part 5 (see section 188(1)).35
- (8) Section 269BC (banking companies: supplementary definitions) has effect for the purposes of this section. 40

*Non-banking or pre-2016 loss relief*

**269DC Meaning of “non-banking or pre-2016 loss relief”**

- (1) In section 269DA(2), “non-banking or pre-2016 loss relief” means the aggregate of— 45
  - (a) any amounts that are deducted in determining the taxable total profits of the company of the chargeable accounting period, in respect of—

- 
- |  |                              |
|--|------------------------------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(i) a non-banking or pre-2016 carried-forward trading loss,</li> <li>(ii) a non-banking or pre-2016 carried-forward non-trading deficit,</li> <li>(iii) non-banking or pre-2016 carried-forward management expenses,</li> <li>(iv) a non-banking or pre-2016 carried-forward UK property loss,</li> <li>(v) a non-banking or pre-2016 carried-forward overseas property loss,</li> <li>(vi) a non-banking or pre-2016 carried-forward excess capital allowance on special leasing,</li> <li>(vii) a non-banking or pre-2016 carried-forward miscellaneous loss, or</li> <li>(viii) a non-banking or pre-2016 carried-forward capital loss, and</li> </ul> | <p>5</p> <p>10</p> <p>15</p> |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(b) any used amount, for the chargeable accounting period, in respect of a non-banking or pre-2016 non-trading loss on intangible fixed assets.</li> </ul>  |                              |
| <p>(2) For the purposes of this section –</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) a “non-banking” accounting period is an accounting period in relation to which the company was not a banking company, and</li> <li>(b) a “pre-2016” accounting period is an accounting period of the company ending before 1 January 2016.</li> </ul>   | <p>20</p> <p>25</p>          |
| <p>(3) “A non-banking or pre-2016 carried-forward trading loss” means a loss which –</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) was made in a trade of the company in a non-banking or pre-2016 accounting period, and</li> <li>(b) is carried forward to the chargeable accounting period under section 45 (carry forward of trade loss against subsequent trade profits).</li> </ul>   | <p>30</p>                    |
| <p>(4) “A non-banking or pre-2016 carried-forward non-trading deficit” means a non-trading deficit –</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) which the company had from its loan relationships under section 301(6) of CTA 2009 for a non-banking or pre-2016 accounting period, and</li> <li>(b) which is carried forward under section 457 of that Act (carry forward of deficits to accounting periods after deficit period) to be set off against non-trading profits of the chargeable accounting period.</li> </ul>   | <p>35</p> <p>40</p>          |
| <p>(5) In subsection (4), “non-trading profits” has the same meaning as in section 457 of CTA 2009.</p>  |                              |
| <p>(6) “Non-banking or pre-2016 management expenses” means amounts that fall within subsection (7) or (8).</p>   | <p>45</p>                    |
| <p>(7) The amounts within this subsection are amounts –</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) which fall within subsection (2) of section 1223 of CTA 2009 (carry forward of expenses of management and other amounts),</li> </ul>  |                              |

- (b) which—
    - (i) for the purposes of Chapter 2 of Part 16 of CTA 2009 are referable to a non-banking or pre-2016 accounting period, or
    - (ii) in the case of qualifying charitable donations, were made in such an accounting period, and
  - (c) which are treated by section 1223(3) of CTA 2009 as expenses of management deductible for the chargeable accounting period.
- (8) The amounts within this subsection are amounts of loss which—
  - (a) were made in a non-banking or pre-2016 accounting period, and
  - (b) are treated by section 63(3) (carry forward of certain losses made by company with investment business which ceases to carry on UK property business) as expenses of management deductible for the chargeable accounting period for the purposes of Chapter 2 of Part 16 of CTA 2009.
- (9) “A non-banking or pre-2016 carried-forward UK property loss” means a loss which—
  - (a) was made by the company in a UK property business in a non-banking or pre-2016 accounting period, and
  - (b) is carried forward to the chargeable accounting period under section 62(5) (carry forward of UK property business loss to be treated as loss of subsequent accounting period).
- (10) “A non-banking or pre-2016 carried-forward overseas property loss” means a loss which—
  - (a) was made by the company in an overseas property business in a non-banking or pre-2016 accounting period, and
  - (b) is carried forward to the chargeable accounting period under section 66(3) (carry forward of overseas property business loss against subsequent losses of that kind).
- (11) “A non-banking or pre-2016 carried-forward excess capital allowance on special leasing” means an amount of capital allowance—
  - (a) to which the company was entitled for a non-banking or pre-2016 accounting period, and
  - (b) which must be deducted under section 260 of CAA 2001 (special leasing: corporation tax, excess allowance) from income of the company for the chargeable accounting period.
- (12) “A non-banking or pre-2016 carried-forward miscellaneous loss” means a loss which—
  - (a) was made by the company in a transaction within subsection (2) of section 91 (relief for losses from miscellaneous transactions) in a non-banking or pre-2016 accounting period, and
  - (b) is carried forward to the chargeable accounting period under subsection (6) of that section (carry forward of miscellaneous losses against miscellaneous income).

- 
- (13) “A non-banking or pre-2016 carried-forward capital loss” means an allowable loss which –
- (a) accrued to the company in a non-banking or pre-2016 accounting period, and
  - (b) is to be deducted under section 8(1)(b) of TCGA 1992 (deduction of allowable losses from previous accounting periods) from the total amount of chargeable gains accruing to the company in the chargeable accounting period. 5
- (14) The company has “a non-banking or pre-2016 non-trading loss on intangible fixed assets” if it had a non-trading loss under section 751 of CTA 2009 (non-trading gains and losses) on intangible fixed assets in the relevant accounting period. 10
- (15) The “relevant accounting period” is –
- (a) if in relation to any accounting period beginning on or after 1 January 2016 the company was not a banking company, its most recent non-banking accounting period, and 15
  - (b) in any other case, the company’s last pre-2016 accounting period (if any).
- (16) If all or part of the non-banking or pre-2016 non-trading loss on intangible fixed assets is carried forward as a non-trading debit to the accounting period following the relevant accounting period under section 753(3) of CTA 2009 (“the initially carried-forward debit”), there is a “used amount”, for the chargeable accounting period, in respect of that loss if – 20
- (a) the initially carried-forward debit exceeds the aggregate of any used amounts, for any previous chargeable accounting periods, in respect of that loss, and 25
  - (b) there are any non-trading credits for the chargeable accounting period or a non-trading loss on intangible fixed assets is to be set off against the company’s total profits for that period under section 753(1) of that Act. 30
- (17) If there is a used amount for the chargeable accounting period in respect of the non-banking or pre-2016 non-trading loss on intangible fixed assets it is to be calculated in accordance with subsections (18) and (19). 35
- (18) If the remaining carried-forward debit for the chargeable accounting period (see subsection (20)) does not exceed the aggregate of –
- (a) any non-trading credits for that period, and
  - (b) any amount of non-trading loss on intangible fixed assets that is to be set off against the profits of the company for that period under section 753(1) of CTA 2009, 40
- the used amount, for that period, in respect of the non-banking or pre-2016 non-trading loss on intangible fixed assets is equal to the remaining carried-forward debit for that period.
- (19) If the remaining carried-forward debit for the chargeable accounting period exceeds the aggregate of any amounts within paragraph (a) or (b) of subsection (18), the used amount, for that period, in respect of the non-banking or pre-2016 non-trading loss on intangible fixed assets is equal to the aggregate of those amounts. 45

- (20) In subsections (16) to (19) –
- “non-trading credit” means a non-trading credit in respect of intangible fixed assets for the purposes of Part 8 of CTA 2009;
  - “the remaining carried-forward debit”, in relation to the chargeable accounting period, means the amount of the excess referred to in subsection (16)(a).
- 5

*The surcharge allowance*

**269DD Surcharge allowance for banking company in a group containing other banking companies**

- (1) This section makes provision as to the surcharge allowance of a banking company for a chargeable accounting period where, at any time in the period –
- (a) the banking company is a member of a group, and
  - (b) one or more other banking companies are members of that group.
- 10  
15
- (2) The banking company’s surcharge allowance for the chargeable accounting period is so much of its available surcharge allowance for the period as it specifies in its company tax return as its surcharge allowance for the period.
- (3) The banking company’s “available surcharge allowance” for the chargeable accounting period is the sum of –
- (a) any amounts of group surcharge allowance allocated to the company for the period in accordance with sections 269DE to 269DH, and
  - (b) the appropriate amount of non-group surcharge allowance of the company for the period, up to a limit of £25,000,000.
- 20  
25
- (4) The “appropriate amount of non-group surcharge allowance” of the company, for the chargeable accounting period, is –
- $$\frac{\text{DNG}}{\text{DAC}} \times \text{£25,000,000}$$
- 30
- where –
- “DNG” is the number of days in the period on which the company is not a member of a group that has another member that is a banking company;
  - “DAC” is the total number of days in the period.
- 35
- (5) If the chargeable accounting period is less than 12 months –
- (a) the appropriate amount of non-group surcharge allowance, and
  - (b) the limit in subsection (3),
- are proportionally reduced.
- 40
- (6) The sum of –
- (a) any amount specified under subsection (2) for the chargeable accounting period, and

(b) any amount that is specified under section 371BI(2) of TIOPA 2010 (calculation of CFC charge on banking companies) for the period,  
 may not exceed the available surcharge allowance for the period.

- (7) Section 269DJ contains provision about what happens if the requirement in subsection (6) is not met. 5

**269DE Group surcharge allowance and the nominated company**

- (1) This section applies where –  
 (a) two or more members of a group are banking companies, and  
 (b) all the banking companies that are members of the group together nominate (the “group allowance nomination”) one of their number (the “nominated company”) for the purposes of this Chapter. 10

- (2) The “group surcharge allowance” for the group is £25,000,000 for each accounting period of the nominated company throughout which the group allowance nomination has effect. 15

- (3) If the group allowance nomination takes effect, or ceases to have effect, part of the way through an accounting period of the nominated company, the “group surcharge allowance” for the group for that period is – 20

$$\frac{DN}{DAC} \times \text{£}25,000,000$$

where –

“DN” is the number of days in the accounting period on which a group allowance nomination that nominates the nominated company in relation to the group has effect, and 25  
 “DAC” is the total number of days in the accounting period.

- (4) If an accounting period of the nominated company is less than 12 months, the group surcharge allowance for that period is proportionally reduced.

- (5) A group allowance nomination must state the date on which it is to take effect (which may be earlier than the date the nomination is made). 30

- (6) A group allowance nomination is of no effect unless it is signed by the appropriate person on behalf of each company that is, when the nomination is made, a member of the group and a banking company. 35

- (7) A group allowance nomination ceases to have effect –  
 (a) immediately before the date on which a new group allowance nomination in respect of the group takes effect,  
 (b) upon the appropriate person in relation to a banking company that is a member of the group notifying an officer of Revenue and Customs, in writing, that the group allowance nomination is revoked, or 40  
 (c) upon the nominated company ceasing to be a banking company or ceasing to be a member of the group.

- (8) The Commissioners for Her Majesty’s Revenue and Customs may by regulations make further provision about a group allowance nomination or any notification under this section including, in particular, provision –
- (a) about the form and manner in which a nomination or notification may be made, 5
  - (b) about how a nomination may be revoked and the form and manner of such revocation,
  - (c) requiring a person to notify HMRC of the making or revocation of a nomination, 10
  - (d) requiring a person to give information to HMRC in connection with the making or revocation of a nomination or the giving of a notification,
  - (e) imposing time limits in relation to making or revoking a nomination or giving a notification, and 15
  - (f) providing that a nomination or its revocation, or a notification, is of no effect, or ceases to have effect, if time limits or other requirements under the regulations are not met.
- (9) In this Chapter “the appropriate person”, in relation to a company, means – 20
- (a) the proper officer of the company, or
  - (b) such other person as may for the time being have the express, implied or apparent authority of the company to act on its behalf for the purposes of this Chapter. 25
- (10) Subsections (3) and (4) of section 108 of TMA 1970 (responsibility of company officers: meaning of “proper officer”) apply for the purposes of subsection (9) as they apply for the purposes of that section.

**269DF Group allowance allocation statement: submission** 30

- (1) A company must submit a group allowance allocation statement to HMRC for each of its accounting periods in which it is the nominated company in relation to a group.  
This is subject to subsections (2) and (3).
- (2) If a company ceases to be the nominated company in relation to a group before it submits a group allowance allocation statement to HMRC for an accounting period – 35
- (a) that company may not submit the statement, and
  - (b) the company that is for the time being the nominated company in relation to the group must do so. 40
- (3) But if a new group allowance nomination in respect of the group takes effect on a date before it is made, that does not affect the validity of the submission of any group allowance allocation statement submitted before the date the new nomination is made.
- (4) A group allowance allocation statement under this section must be received by HMRC within 12 months of the end of the accounting period, of the nominated company, to which it relates. 45

- (5) A group allowance allocation statement under this section may be submitted at a later time if an officer of Revenue and Customs allows it.
- (6) A group allowance allocation statement under this section must comply with the requirements of section 269DH. 5

**269DG Group allowance allocation statement: submission of revised statement**

- (1) This section applies if a group allowance allocation statement has been submitted under section 269DF, or this section, in respect of an accounting period of a company that is, or was, a nominated company (“the nominee’s accounting period”). 10
- (2) A revised group allowance allocation statement in respect of the nominee’s accounting period may be submitted to HMRC by the company that is for the time being the nominated company in relation to the group. 15
- (3) But if a new group allowance nomination in respect of the group takes effect on a date before it is made, that does not affect the validity of the submission of any revised group allowance allocation statement submitted before the date the new nomination is made.
- (4) A revised group allowance allocation statement may be submitted on or before whichever is the latest of the following dates – 20
- (a) the last day of the period of 36 months after the end of the nominee’s accounting period;
  - (b) if notice of enquiry (within the meaning of Schedule 18 to FA 1998) is given into a relevant company tax return, 30 days after the enquiry is completed; 25
  - (c) if, after such an enquiry, an officer of Revenue and Customs amends the return under paragraph 34(2) of that Schedule, 30 days after the notice of amendment is issued;
  - (d) if an appeal is brought against such an amendment, 30 days after the date on which the appeal is finally determined. 30
- (5) A revised group allowance allocation statement may be submitted at a later time if an officer of Revenue and Customs allows it.
- (6) In this section “relevant company tax return” means a company tax return of a banking company for a chargeable accounting period for which an amount of group surcharge allowance was, or could have been, allocated by a previous group allowance allocation statement in respect of the nominee’s accounting period. 35
- (7) The references in subsection (4) to an enquiry into a relevant company tax return do not include an enquiry resulting from an amendment of such a return where – 40
- (a) the scope of the enquiry is limited as mentioned in paragraph 25(2) of Schedule 18 to FA 1998 (enquiry into amendments when time limit for enquiry into return as originally submitted is passed), and 45
  - (b) the amendment relates only to the allocation of group surcharge allowance for the nominee’s accounting period.

- (8) A group allowance allocation statement under this section must comply with the requirements of section 269DH.

**269DH Group allowance allocation statement: requirements and effect**

- (1) This section applies in relation to a group allowance allocation statement submitted under section 269DF or 269DG. 5
- (2) The statement must be signed by the appropriate person in relation to the company giving the statement.
- (3) The statement must –
- (a) identify the group to which it relates,
  - (b) specify the accounting period, of the company that is or was the nominee company, to which the statement relates (“the nominee’s accounting period”), 10
  - (c) specify the days in the nominee’s accounting period on which that company was the nominated company in relation to the group or state that that company was the nominated company throughout the period, 15
  - (d) state the group surcharge allowance the group has for the nominee’s accounting period,
  - (e) list one or more of the banking companies that were members of the group in the nominee’s accounting period (“listed banking companies”), 20
  - (f) allocate amounts of the group surcharge allowance to the listed banking companies, and
  - (g) for each amount of group surcharge allowance allocated to a listed banking company, specify the chargeable accounting period of the listed banking company for which it is allocated. 25
- (4) An amount of group surcharge allowance allocated to a listed banking company must be allocated to that company for a chargeable accounting period that falls wholly or partly in the nominee’s accounting period. 30
- (5) The maximum amount of group surcharge allowance that may be allocated, by the group allowance allocation statement, to a listed banking company for a chargeable accounting period of that company is – 35
- $$\frac{\text{DAP}}{\text{DNAP}} \times \text{GSA}$$
- where –
- “DAP” is the number of days in the chargeable accounting period that are in the nominee’s accounting period;
  - “DNAP” is the number of days in the nominee’s accounting period; 40
  - “GSA” is the group surcharge allowance of the group for the nominee’s accounting period.
- (6) The sum of the amounts allocated to listed banking companies by the group allowance allocation statement may not exceed the group surcharge allowance for the nominee’s accounting period. 45

- 
- (7) If a group allowance allocation statement is submitted that does not comply with subsection (5) or (6), the company that is, for the time being, the nominated company in relation to the group must submit a revised group allowance allocation statement that does comply with those subsections within 30 days of the date on which the group allowance allocation statement that did not comply was submitted. 5
- (8) If a group allowance allocation statement –  
 (a) complies with those subsections when it is submitted, but  
 (b) subsequently ceases to comply with either of them,  
 the company that is, for the time being, the nominated company in relation to the group must submit a revised group allowance allocation statement that does comply with those subsections within 30 days of the date on which the group allowance allocation statement ceased to comply with one of those subsections. 10
- (9) If a company fails to comply with subsection (7) or (8), an officer of Revenue and Customs may by written notice to the company amend the group allowance allocation statement as the officer thinks fit for the purpose of making it comply with subsections (5) and (6). 15
- (10) An officer of Revenue and Customs who issues a notice under subsection (9) to a company must, at the same time, send a copy of the notice to each of the listed banking companies. 20
- (11) The time limits otherwise applicable to the amendment of a company tax return do not apply to any such amendment to the extent that it is made in consequence of a group allowance allocation statement being submitted in accordance with section 269DF or 269DG. 25
- (12) The Commissioners for Her Majesty’s Revenue and Customs may by regulations make further provision about a group allowance allocation statement including, in particular, provision –  
 (a) about the form of a statement and the manner in which it is to be submitted, 30  
 (b) requiring a person to give information to HMRC in connection with a statement,  
 (c) as to the circumstances in which a statement that is not received by the time specified in section 269DF(4) or 269DG(4) is to be treated as if it were so received, and 35  
 (d) as to circumstances in which a statement that does not comply with the requirements of this section is to be treated as if it did comply.
- 269DI Surcharge allowance for company not in a group containing other banking companies** 40
- (1) This section makes provision as to the surcharge allowance of a banking company for a chargeable accounting period where section 269DD (surcharge allowance for banking company in a group containing other banking companies) does not apply.
- (2) The banking company’s surcharge allowance for the chargeable accounting period is so much of its available surcharge allowance for the period as it specifies in its company tax return as its surcharge allowance for that period. 45

- 
- (3) The banking company’s “available surcharge allowance” for the chargeable accounting period is £25,000,000.
- (4) If the chargeable accounting period is less than 12 months, the banking company’s available surcharge allowance for the period is proportionally reduced. 5
- (5) The sum of –
- (a) any amount specified under subsection (2) for the chargeable accounting period, and
  - (b) any amount that is specified under section 371BI(2) of TIOPA 2010 (calculation of CFC charge on banking companies) for the period, 10
- may not exceed the available surcharge allowance for the period.
- (6) Section 269DJ contains provision about what happens if the requirement in subsection (5) is not met.
- 269DJ Excessive specifications of available surcharge allowance 15**
- (1) This section applies if –
- (a) a banking company’s company tax return for a chargeable accounting period –
    - (i) specifies an amount under section 269DD(2) or 269DI(2) as its surcharge allowance for the period, or 20
    - (ii) specifies an amount under section 371BI(2) of TIOPA 2010 (calculation of CFC charge on banking companies) for the period, and
  - (b) the requirement in section 269DD(6) or (as the case may be) 269DI(5) is not met. 25
- (2) The company must, so far as it may do so, amend the company tax return so that the requirement is met.
- (3) If an officer of Revenue and Customs considers that, as a consequence of the requirement not being met, an insufficient sum has been charged on the company under section 269DA, or at step 5 in section 371BC(1) of TIOPA 2010, for the chargeable accounting period, the officer may make an assessment to tax in the amount which in the officer’s opinion ought to be charged. 30
- (4) The power in subsection (3) is without prejudice to the power to make a discovery assessment under paragraph 41(1) of Schedule 18 to FA 1998. 35
- (5) If an assessment under subsection (3) is made because a company fails, or is unable, to amend its company tax return in accordance with subsection (2) in consequence of the amount of group surcharge allowance allocated to it for an accounting period being altered, the assessment is not out of time if it is made within 12 months of the date on which the alteration took place. 40

*Application of Corporation Tax Acts: administration, double taxation etc*

**269DK Application of enactments applying to corporation tax: assessment, recovery, double taxation etc**

- |   |              |
|---|--------------|
| (1) The provision in section 269DA relating to the charging of a sum as if it were an amount of corporation tax is to be taken as applying all enactments applying generally to corporation tax.  | 5            |
| (2) But this is subject to—<br>(a) the provisions of the Taxes Acts,<br>(b) any necessary modifications, and<br>(c) subsection (5).   | 10           |
| (3) The enactments mentioned in subsection (1) include—<br>(a) those relating to returns of information and the supply of accounts, statements and reports,<br>(b) those relating to the assessing, collecting and receiving of corporation tax,<br>(c) those conferring or regulating a right of appeal, and<br>(d) those concerning administration, penalties, interest on unpaid tax and priority of tax in cases of insolvency under the law of any part of the United Kingdom.     | 15           |
| (4) Accordingly, TMA 1970 is to have effect as if any reference to corporation tax included a sum chargeable under section 269DA as if it were an amount of corporation tax (but this does not limit subsections (1) to (3)).   | 20           |
| (5) In the Corporation Tax (Treatment of Unrelieved Surplus Advance Corporation Tax) Regulations 1999 (S.I. 1999/358) or any further regulations made under section 32 of FA 1998 (unrelieved surplus advance corporation tax)—<br>(a) references to corporation tax do not include a sum chargeable on a banking company under section 269DA as if it were an amount of corporation tax, and<br>(b) references to profits charged to corporation tax do not include surcharge profits. | 25<br><br>30 |
| (6) Part 2 of TIOPA 2010 (double taxation relief) applies to a sum chargeable under section 269DA as if it were an amount of corporation tax, subject to subsections (7) to (9).<br>In those subsections, “credit for foreign tax” means a credit allowable under that Part.  | 35           |
| (7) A non-banking or pre-2016 carried-forward credit for foreign tax is not to be allowed against a sum chargeable on a company under section 269DA, for a chargeable accounting period, as if it were an amount of corporation tax.  | 40           |
| (8) “A non-banking or pre-2016 carried-forward credit for foreign tax” is a credit for foreign tax in respect of an amount—<br>(a) which was an amount of a credit for foreign tax that would (ignoring section 42 of TIOPA 2010) have been allowable against corporation tax of the kind mentioned in section 72(1)(a) of that Act in an accounting period of the company—   | 45           |

- (i) in relation to which the company was not a banking company, or
    - (ii) ending before 1 January 2016, and
  - (b) which is treated under paragraph (a) of section 73(1) of that Act as if it were foreign tax of the kind mentioned in that paragraph in relation to the chargeable accounting period. 5
- (9) Any credit for foreign tax that is allowable against –
- (a) corporation tax for an accounting period, and
  - (b) a sum chargeable for that period under section 269DA as if it were an amount of corporation tax, 10
- is to be allowed against the corporation tax first, before any of the credit then remaining is allowed against the sum so chargeable.
- (10) In this section “the Taxes Acts” has the same meaning as in TMA 1970 (see section 118(1) of that Act).

**269DL Payments in respect of the surcharge: information to be provided** 15

- (1) This section applies if –
- (a) a sum is chargeable on a company (“the chargeable company”) under section 269DA, for a chargeable accounting period, as if it were an amount of corporation tax, and
  - (b) a payment is made (whether or not by the chargeable company) that is wholly or partly in respect of that sum. 20
- (2) The responsible company must notify an officer of Revenue and Customs in writing, on or before the date the payment is made, of the amount of the payment that is in respect of the sum that is chargeable under section 269DA. 25
- (3) “The responsible company” is –
- (a) if the chargeable company is party to relevant group payment arrangements, the company that is, under those arrangements, to discharge the liability of the chargeable company to pay corporation tax for the chargeable accounting period, and
  - (b) otherwise, the chargeable company. 30
- (4) “Relevant group payment arrangements” means arrangements under section 59F(1) of TMA 1970 (arrangements for paying of tax on behalf of group members) that relate to the chargeable accounting period. 35
- (5) The requirement in subsection (2) is to be treated, for the purposes of Part 7 of Schedule 36 to FA 2008 (information and inspection powers: penalties), as a requirement in an information notice.
- (6) This section is subject to any provision to the contrary in regulations under section 59E of TMA 1970 (further provision as to when corporation tax is due and payable). 40

*Anti-avoidance*

**269DM Profit and loss shifting to avoid or reduce surcharge liability**

- (1) Subsection (3) applies in relation to a banking company if – 45

- 
- (a) there are arrangements that result in a relevant transfer, and  
 (b) the main purpose, or one of the main purposes, of the arrangements is to avoid, or reduce, a sum being charged on the banking company under section 269DA.
- (2) There is a “relevant transfer” if there is, in substance – 5
- (a) a transfer (directly or indirectly) of all or a significant part of the surcharge profits of the banking company, for a chargeable accounting period, to a non-banking company, or  
 (b) a transfer (directly or indirectly) of a loss or deductible amount to the banking company, for a chargeable accounting period, from a non-banking company, resulting in the elimination or significant reduction of the banking company’s surcharge profits for that period. 10
- (3) For the purposes of section 269DA, the surcharge profits of the banking company, for the chargeable accounting period, are to be taken to be what they would have been had the relevant transfer not taken place. 15
- (4) In this section –
- “arrangements” includes any agreement, understanding, scheme, transaction or series of transactions (whether or not legally enforceable); 20
- “CFC” and “chargeable company” have the same meaning as in Part 9A of TIOPA 2010 (controlled foreign companies) (see section 371VA of that Act);
- “deductible amount” means – 25
- (a) an expense of a trade, other than an amount treated as such an expense by section 450(a) of CAA 2001 (research and development allowances treated as expenses in calculating profits of a trade),  
 (b) an expense of a UK property business or overseas property business, 30  
 (c) an expense of management of a company’s investment business within the meaning of section 1219 of CTA 2009,  
 (d) a non-trading debit within the meaning of Parts 5 and 6 of CTA 2009 (loan relationships and relationships treated as such) (see section 301(2) of that Act), or 35  
 (e) a non-trading debit within the meaning of Part 8 of CTA 2009 (intangible fixed assets) (see section 746 of that Act); 40
- “non-banking company” means a company that, at any time when the arrangements mentioned in subsection (1) have effect, is neither –
- (a) a banking company, nor  
 (b) a CFC in relation to which a banking company is a chargeable company. 45

*Interpretation*

**269DN Interpretation**

In this Chapter –

- “the appropriate person” has the meaning given by 269DE(9);
- “banking company” has the meaning given by section 269B; 5
- “chargeable accounting period” has the meaning given by section 269DA(1);
- “company tax return” has the same meaning as in Schedule 18 to FA 1998;
- “group” has the meaning given by section 269BD; 10
- “group allowance allocation statement” means a group allowance allocation statement submitted under section 269DF or 269DG;
- “group allowance nomination” has the meaning given by section 269DE(1); 15
- “group surcharge allowance” has the meaning given by section 269DE;
- “HMRC” means Her Majesty’s Revenue and Customs;
- “nominated company” has the meaning given by section 269DE(1); 20
- “surcharge allowance” has the meaning given by section 269DA(3) and (4);
- “surcharge profits” has the meaning given by section 269DA(2).”

PART 2 25

CONSEQUENTIAL AMENDMENTS

*TMA 1970*

- 2 In section 59E of TMA 1970 (further provision as to when corporation tax is due and payable), in subsection (11), after paragraph (b) insert –
  - “(ba) to any sum chargeable on a company under section 269DA of CTA 2010 (surcharge on banking companies) as if it were an amount of corporation tax chargeable on the company;”. 30

*FA 1998*

- 3 (1) Schedule 18 to FA 1998 (company tax returns, assessments and related matters) is amended as follows. 35
  - (2) In paragraph 1 (meaning of “tax”) –
    - (a) before the entry relating to section 455 of CTA 2010 insert –
      - “section 269DA of the Corporation Tax Act 2010 (surcharge on banking companies),” and
    - (b) in the entry relating to section 455 of CTA 2010, for “the Corporation Tax Act 2010” substitute “that Act”. 40
  - (3) In paragraph 8(1) (calculation of tax payable), in the third step, after

paragraph 1 insert –

“1ZA. Any sum chargeable under section 269DA of that Act (surcharge on banking companies).”

#### CTA 2010

4	CTA 2010 is amended as follows.	5	
5	In section 269A (overview of Part 7A), at the end insert – “(4) Chapter 4 contains provision for a surcharge on banking companies.”		
6	In Schedule 4 to CTA 2010 (index of defined expressions), at the appropriate places insert –	10	
	“the appropriate person (in Chapter 4 of Part 7A)	section 269DE(9)”	
	“chargeable accounting period (in Chapter 4 of Part 7A)	section 269DA(1)”	
	“company tax return (in Chapter 4 of Part 7A)	section 269DN”	15
	“group allowance allocation statement (in Chapter 4 of Part 7A)	section 269DN”	
	“group allowance nomination (in Chapter 4 of Part 7A)	section 269DE(1)”	20
	“group surcharge allowance (in Chapter 4 of Part 7A)	section 269DE”	
	“HMRC (in Chapter 4 of Part 7A)	section 269DN”	25
	“nominated company (in Chapter 4 of Part 7A)	section 269DE(1)”	
	“surcharge allowance (in Chapter 4 of Part 7A)	section 269DA(3) and (4)”	
	“surcharge profits (in Chapter 4 of Part 7A)	section 269DA(2)”	30

#### TIOPA 2010

7	Part 9A of TIOPA 2010 (controlled foreign companies) is amended as follows.	
8	In section 371BC (charging the CFC charge), at step 5 in subsection (1), for “and 371BH” substitute “to 371BI”.	35

9 After section 371BH insert –

**“371BI Banking companies**

- (1) In relation to a chargeable company that is a banking company for the relevant corporation tax accounting period, step 5 in section 371BC(1) is to be taken in accordance with this section. 5
- (2) The amount given by paragraph (a) at step 5 is to be increased by an amount equal to –  
$$(PCP - SASA) \times SP$$
where –  
“PCP” is P% of the CFC’s chargeable profits; 10  
“SASA” is so much (if any) of the chargeable company’s available surcharge allowance as the company specifies for the purposes of this subsection in its company tax return for the relevant corporation tax accounting period;  
“SP” is the percentage specified in section 269DA(1) of CTA 2010 (surcharge on banking companies). 15
- (3) Subsection (5) applies in relation to the chargeable company if –  
(a) there are arrangements that result in a relevant transfer, and  
(b) the main purpose, or one of the main purposes, of the arrangements is to avoid, or reduce, a sum being charged on the chargeable company at step 5 in section 371BC(1) in consequence of subsection (2). 20
- (4) There is a “relevant transfer” if there is, in substance –  
(a) a transfer (directly or indirectly) of all or a significant part of the chargeable profits of the CFC, for the CFC’s accounting period, to a non-banking company, or 25  
(b) a transfer (directly or indirectly) of a loss or deductible amount to the CFC, for the CFC’s accounting period, from a non-banking company, resulting in the elimination or significant reduction of the CFC’s chargeable profits for that period. 30
- (5) For the purposes of subsection (2), the CFC’s chargeable profits are to be taken to be what they would have been had the relevant transfer not taken place.
- (6) In this section – 35  
“arrangements” includes any agreement, understanding, scheme, transaction or series of transactions (whether or not legally enforceable);  
“available surcharge allowance” means available surcharge allowance under section 269DD or (as the case may be) 269DI of CTA 2010; 40  
“banking company” has the same meaning as in Part 7A of CTA 2010 (see section 269B of that Act);  
“deductible amount” means – 45  
(a) an expense of a trade, other than an amount treated as such an expense by section 450(a) of CAA 2001 (research and development allowances treated as expenses in calculating profits of a trade),

- (b) an expense of a UK property business or overseas property business,
- (c) an expense of management of a company’s investment business within the meaning of section 1219 of CTA 2009, 5
- (d) a non-trading debit within the meaning of Parts 5 and 6 of CTA 2009 (loan relationships and relationships treated as such) (see section 301(2) of that Act), or
- (e) a non-trading debit within the meaning of Part 8 of CTA 2009 (intangible fixed assets) (see section 746 of that Act); 10
- “company tax return” has the same meaning as in Schedule 18 to FA 1998;
- “non-banking company” means a company that, at any time when the arrangements mentioned in subsection (3) have effect, is neither – 15
- (a) a banking company, nor
- (b) a CFC in relation to which a banking company is a chargeable company.
- (7) Sections 269DD(6) and 269DI(5) of CTA 2010 contain restrictions on the amount of available surcharge allowance that can be specified and section 269DJ of that Act makes provision about what happens if those restrictions are exceeded.” 20
- 10 After section 371UB insert –
- “371UBA Payments in respect of a charge on a banking company: information to be provided”** 25
- (1) This section applies if –
- (a) a sum is charged on a chargeable company at step 5 in section 371BC(1),
- (b) the chargeable company is a banking company (within the meaning of Part 7A of CTA 2010) for the relevant corporation tax accounting period, and 30
- (c) a payment is made (whether or not by the chargeable company) that is wholly or partly in respect of the sum charged on the chargeable company as mentioned in paragraph (a). 35
- (2) The responsible company must notify an officer of Revenue and Customs in writing, on or before the date the payment is made, of the amount of the payment that is in respect of the sum charged on the chargeable company as mentioned in subsection (1)(a). 40
- (3) “The responsible company” is –
- (a) if the chargeable company is party to relevant group payment arrangements, the company that is, under those arrangements, to discharge the liability of the chargeable company to pay corporation tax for the relevant corporation tax accounting period, and 45
- (b) otherwise, the chargeable company.

- (4) “Relevant group payment arrangements” means arrangements under section 59F(1) of TMA 1970 (arrangements for paying of tax on behalf of group members) that relate to the relevant corporation tax accounting period.
- (5) The requirement in subsection (2) is to be treated, for the purposes of Part 7 of Schedule 36 to FA 2008 (information and inspection powers: penalties), as a requirement in an information notice. 5
- (6) This section is subject to any provision to the contrary in regulations under section 59E of TMA 1970 (further provision as to when corporation tax is due and payable). 10
- (7) In this section “relevant corporation tax accounting period” has the meaning given by section 371BC(3).”

FA 2015

- 11 Part 3 of FA 2015 (diverted profits tax) is amended as follows.
- 12 (1) Section 79 (charge to tax) is amended as follows. 15
  - (2) In subsection (2), for “The” substitute “Subject to subsections (3) and (3A), the”.
  - (3) In subsection (3), for “But if” substitute “If”.
  - (4) After subsection (3) insert –
    - “(3A) If, and to the extent that, the taxable diverted profits are banking surcharge profits or notional banking surcharge profits, subsection (2)(a) has effect in relation to those profits as if the rate specified were 33% rather than 25%.” 20
  - (5) In subsection (5) –
    - (a) after the definition of “adjusted ring fence profits” insert – 25
      - ““banking surcharge profits” means surcharge profits within the meaning of Chapter 4 of Part 7A of that Act (see section 269DA(2) of that Act);”;
    - (b) after the definition of “notional adjusted ring fence profits” insert – 30
      - ““notional banking surcharge profits”, in relation to the company, means the total of –
      - (a) profits within section 85(5)(a) or 91(5)(a), to the extent that (assuming they were profits of the company chargeable to corporation tax) they would have been banking surcharge profits, and 35
      - (b) any amounts of relevant taxable income of a company (“CC”) within section 85(4)(b) or (5)(b) or 91(4)(b) or (5)(b), to the extent that (assuming those amounts were profits of CC chargeable to corporation tax) they would have been banking surcharge profits of CC.” 40
- 13 In section 107 (meaning of “effective tax mismatch outcome”), in the

definition of “relevant tax” in subsection (8), after paragraph (a) insert—

- “(aa) a sum chargeable under section 269DA of CTA 2010 (surcharge on banking companies) as if it were an amount of corporation tax,”.

PART 3

5

COMMENCEMENT

*Surcharge*

- 14 (1) The amendments made by paragraphs 1 and 4 to 6 of this Schedule have effect for accounting periods beginning on or after the commencement date.
- (2) Where a company has an accounting period beginning before the commencement date and ending on or after that date (“the straddling period”), sub-paragraphs (3) to (10) apply. 10
- (3) For the purposes of determining whether the surcharge is chargeable on the company for the straddling period and, if so, in what amount—
- (a) so much of the straddling period as falls before the commencement date, and so much of that period as falls on or after that date, are to be treated as separate accounting periods, and 15
- (b) where it is necessary to apportion an amount for the straddling period to the two separate accounting periods, it is to be apportioned— 20
- (i) in accordance with section 1172 of CTA 2010 (time basis), or
- (ii) if that method would produce a result that is unjust or unreasonable, on a just and reasonable basis.
- (4) Accordingly, the surcharge chargeable on the company for the straddling period (if any) is equal to the surcharge that would be chargeable on the company, in accordance with sub-paragraph (3), for the separate accounting period beginning with the commencement date. 25
- (5) Sub-paragraphs (6) to (8) apply where—
- (a) the surcharge is chargeable on the company for the straddling period, and 30
- (b) under the Instalment Payment Regulations, one or more instalment payments, in respect of the total liability of the company for the straddling period, were treated as becoming due and payable before the commencement date (“pre-commencement instalments”).
- (6) The surcharge chargeable on the company for the straddling period is to be ignored for the purposes of determining the amount of any pre-commencement instalment. 35
- (7) The first instalment, in respect of the total liability of the company for the straddling period, which under the Instalment Payment Regulations is treated as becoming due and payable on or after the commencement date is to be increased by the adjustment amount. 40
- (8) “The adjustment amount” is the difference between—
- (a) the aggregate amount of the pre-commencement instalments determined in accordance with sub-paragraph (6), and

- (b) the aggregate amount of those instalments determined ignoring sub-paragraph (6) (and so taking into account the surcharge chargeable on the company for the straddling period).
- (9) In the Instalment Payment Regulations –
- (a) in regulations 6(1)(a), 7(2), 8(1)(a) and (2)(a), 9(5), 10(1), 11(1) and 13, references to regulation 4A, 4B, 4C, 4D, 5, 5A or 5B of those Regulations are to be read as including a reference to sub-paragraphs (5) to (8) (and in regulation 7(2) “the regulation in question”, and in regulation 8(2) “that regulation”, are to be read accordingly), and
- (b) in regulation 9(3), the reference to those Regulations is to be read as including a reference to sub-paragraphs (5) to (8).
- (10) In section 59D of TMA 1970 (general rule as to when corporation tax is due and payable), in subsection (5), the reference to section 59E of that Act is to be read as including a reference to sub-paragraphs (5) to (9).
- (11) For the purposes of sections 269DE to 269DH of CTA 2010, if a nominated company has an accounting period beginning before and ending on or after the commencement date, so much of that period as falls before that date, and so much of that period as falls on or after that date, are to be treated as separate accounting periods.
- (12) For the purposes of section 269DM of CTA 2010, it does not matter whether arrangements of the kind mentioned in subsection (1) of that section are entered into before or after this Act is passed.
- (13) In this paragraph “the surcharge” means a sum chargeable under section 269DA of CTA 2010 as if it were an amount of corporation tax.
- 15 The amendment made by paragraph 3 has effect for accounting periods ending on or after the commencement date.

CFCs

- 16 (1) The amendments made by paragraphs 7 to 10 of this Schedule (and the amendment made by paragraph 1 of this Schedule, so far as it relates to those amendments) have effect for accounting periods of CFCs beginning on or after the commencement date.
- (2) Sub-paragraph (3) applies where a CFC has an accounting period beginning before the commencement date and ending on or after that date (“the straddling period”).
- (3) For the purposes of calculating the sum charged on any chargeable company at step 5 of section 371BC(1) of TIOPA 2010 in relation to the straddling period –
- (a) so much of the straddling period as falls before the commencement date, and so much of that period as falls on or after that date, are to be treated as separate accounting periods, and
- (b) where it is necessary to apportion an amount for the straddling period to the two separate accounting periods, it is to be apportioned –
- (i) on a time basis according to the respective lengths of the separate accounting periods, or
- (ii) if that method would produce a result that is unjust or unreasonable, on a just and reasonable basis.

- 
- (4) The sum charged on each chargeable company at step 5 in section 371BC(1) of TIOPA 2010 is the aggregate of the sums that would be charged on that company by taking that step, in accordance with sub-paragraph (3), in relation to each of the separate accounting periods.
- (5) Sub-paragraphs (6) to (8) apply where – 5
- (a) an amount is charged on a company at step 5 in section 371BC(1) of TIOPA 2010 as if were an amount of corporation tax for a relevant corporation tax accounting period,
- (b) that relevant corporation tax accounting period begins before, but ends on or after, the commencement date, and 10
- (c) under the Instalment Payment Regulations, one or more instalment payments, in respect of the total liability of the company for the relevant corporation tax accounting period, were treated as becoming due and payable before the commencement date (“pre-commencement instalments”). 15
- (6) The amendments made by paragraphs 7 to 10 of this Schedule are to be ignored for the purposes of determining the amount of any pre-commencement instalment.
- (7) The first instalment, in respect of the total liability of the company for the relevant corporation tax accounting period, which under the Instalment Payment Regulations is treated as becoming due and payable on or after the commencement date is to be increased by the adjustment amount. 20
- (8) “The adjustment amount” is the difference (if any) between –
- (a) the aggregate amount of the pre-commencement instalments determined in accordance with sub-paragraph (6), and 25
- (b) the aggregate amount of those instalments determined ignoring sub-paragraph (6) (and so taking into account any amount charged on the company at step 5 in section 371BC(1) of TIOPA 2010 for the relevant corporation tax accounting period as a result of the amendments made by paragraphs 7 to 10 of this Schedule). 30
- (9) In the Instalment Payment Regulations –
- (a) in regulations 6(1)(a), 7(2), 8(1)(a) and (2)(a), 9(5), 10(1), 11(1) and 13, references to regulation 4A, 4B, 4C, 4D, 5, 5A or 5B of those Regulations are to be read as including a reference to sub-paragraphs (5) to (8) (and in regulation 7(2) “the regulation in question”, and in regulation 8(2) “that regulation”, are to be read accordingly), and 35
- (b) in regulation 9(3), the reference to those Regulations is to be read as including a reference to sub-paragraphs (5) to (8).
- (10) In section 59D of TMA 1970 (general rule as to when corporation tax is due and payable), in subsection (5), the reference to section 59E of that Act is to be read as including a reference to sub-paragraphs (5) to (9). 40
- (11) For the purposes of section 371BI of TIOPA 2010, it does not matter whether arrangements of the kind mentioned in subsection (3) of that section are entered into before or after this Act is passed.
- (12) In this paragraph – 45
- “accounting period”, “CFC” and “chargeable company” have the same meaning as in Part 9A of TIOPA 2010 (see section 371VA of that Act);

“relevant corporation tax accounting period” has the meaning given by section 371BC(3) of that Act.

*Diverted profits tax*

- 17 (1) The amendments made by paragraphs 11 to 13 of this Schedule have effect in relation to accounting periods beginning on or after the commencement date. 5
- (2) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (1), if an accounting period of a company begins before, and ends on or after, the commencement date (“the straddling period”) –
- (a) so much of the straddling period as falls before that date and so much of that period as falls on or after that date are to be treated as separate accounting periods, and 10
- (b) where it is necessary to apportion an amount for the straddling period to the two separate accounting periods, it is to be apportioned on a just and reasonable basis. 15
- (3) Subsections (1) to (5) of section 113 of FA 2015 (meaning of “accounting period”) have effect for the purposes of this paragraph as they have effect for the purposes of Part 3 of that Act.

*Interpretation*

- 18 In this Part of this Schedule – 20
- “the commencement date” means 1 January 2016;
- “the Instalment Payment Regulations” means the Corporation Tax (Instalment Payments) Regulations 1998 (S.I. 1998/3175);
- and references to the total liability of a company for an accounting period are to be read in accordance with regulation 2(3) of the Instalment Payment Regulations. 25

SCHEDULE 4

Section 23

PENSIONS: ANNUAL ALLOWANCE

PART 1

ALIGNMENT OF PENSION INPUT PERIODS WITH TAX YEARS 30

- 1 Part 4 of FA 2004 is amended as follows.
- 2 In section 238 (pension input periods) –
- (a) in the title, after “period” insert “: arrangement commencing before 9 July 2015”, and
- (b) in subsection (1), after “In the case of an arrangement under a registered pension scheme” insert “where the relevant commencement date is before 9 July 2015, but subject to section 238ZA,”. 35

3 After section 238 insert –

**“238ZA Pension input periods from 9 July 2015 for existing arrangement**

- (1) If the relevant commencement date in the case of an arrangement under a registered pension scheme is before 9 July 2015, section 238(1) and (3) to (6) apply in relation to the arrangement subject to the following. 5
- (2) If a pension input period for the arrangement –  
 (a) begins with 8 July 2015 or an earlier day, and  
 (b) but for this subsection would end with 9 July 2015 or a later day,  
 it ends with 8 July 2015. 10
- (3) If a pension input period for the arrangement ends with 8 July 2015 (whether or not because of subsection (2)), the subsequent pension input periods for the arrangement are –  
 (a) the period beginning with 9 July 2015 and ending with 5 April 2016, and  
 (b) the tax year 2016-17 and each subsequent tax year. 15
- (4) No nominations for the purposes of section 238(3) may be made on or after 9 July 2015.
- (5) “The relevant commencement date” has the meaning given by section 238(2). 20

**238ZB Pension input periods for arrangement commencing after 8 July 2015**

- (1) In the case of an arrangement under a registered pension scheme where the relevant commencement date is 9 July 2015 or later, the following are pension input periods –  
 (a) the period beginning with the relevant commencement date and ending with the first 5 April after the relevant commencement date (or, if the relevant commencement date is itself 5 April, that date), and  
 (b) each tax year beginning after the end of that period. 25 30
- (2) “The relevant commencement date” has the meaning given by section 238(2).
- (3) Once the individual has become entitled to all the benefits which may be provided to the individual under the arrangement, the last pension input period in the case of the arrangement is that in which that was first so.” 35

4 (1) Omit section 227E (pension input periods ending in, but before the end of, a tax year).

(2) In consequence –

- (a) in section 227B(3)(c) (amounts required to be included by section 227E(3) etc) –  
 (i) omit “227E(3) or”,  
 (ii) for “but before” substitute “and contain”, and  
 (iii) omit “or that end in the year and contain that day”, 40

- (b) in section 227C(2) omit paragraph (a) (which refers to section 227E(2)) and the “and” following it,
- (c) in section 227C(2)(b), for “that day” substitute “the day on which rights are first flexibly accessed”, and
- (d) omit section 227D(6) (cases where section 227E(2) applies). 5
- (3) The amendments made by this paragraph have effect for the post-alignment tax year (see the section 228C(2) inserted by this Schedule) and subsequent tax years.
- 5 In section 280(2) (index of defined expressions), in the entry for “pension input period”, for “section 238” substitute “sections 238 to 238ZB”. 10

## PART 2

## ANNUAL ALLOWANCE FOR, AND CARRY-FORWARD FROM, 2015-16

- 6 In Part 4 of FA 2004, after section 228B insert –
- “228C Annual allowance for, and carry-forward from, 2015-16**
- (1) The provisions relating to the annual allowance charge (whether provisions contained in or made under this or any other Act) have effect subject to the following rules. 15
- 2015-16 split into two tax years for annual allowance purposes*
- (2) For the purposes of those provisions but subject to subsection (3), the tax year 2015-16 is to be treated as consisting of two tax years as follows – 20
- (a) one beginning with 6 April 2015 and ending with 8 July 2015 (“the pre-alignment tax year”), and
- (b) one beginning with 9 July 2015 and ending with 5 April 2016 (“the post-alignment tax year”). 25
- (3) Despite subsection (2) –
- (a) separate annual allowance charges for each of the pre-alignment and post-alignment tax years cannot arise, but a single annual allowance charge for the tax year 2015-16 arises if the individual has a chargeable amount for either or each of the pre-alignment and post-alignment tax years, and 30
- (b) that single annual allowance charge is calculated as if –
- (i) in section 227(4) the reference to the chargeable amount were a reference to the sum of the chargeable amounts for the pre-alignment and post-alignment tax years, and 35
- (ii) in section 227(4A) to (4C) each reference to the tax year were to the tax year 2015-16.
- Double allowances allocated to earlier part of 2015-16*
- (4) For the pre-alignment tax year – 40
- (a) the amount specified in section 228(1) (annual allowance for tax year) is treated as being £80,000, and
- (b) in each of sections 227ZA(1)(b) and 227B(2), the reference to £10,000 is treated as a reference to £20,000.

*Allowances for later part of 2015-16 limited to carried-forward allowances*

- (5) Where the individual was a member of a registered pension scheme at some time in the pre-alignment tax year then, for the post-alignment tax year –
- (a) the amount specified in section 228(1) is treated as being nil, 5
  - (b) section 227B(2) (amount of alternative annual allowance) has effect as if “AA” were substituted for “AA – £10,000”,
  - (c) if the chargeable amount in the individual’s case for the pre-alignment tax year is the alternative chargeable amount, the reference to £10,000 in section 227ZA(1)(b) is treated as being a reference to nil, and 10
  - (d) if the chargeable amount in the individual’s case for the pre-alignment tax year is the default chargeable amount, the reference to £10,000 in section 227ZA(1)(b) is treated as being a reference – 15
    - (i) to nil where the money-purchase input sub-total in the individual’s case for the pre-alignment tax year is £20,000 or more, or
    - (ii) to the amount equal to £20,000 minus that sub-total where that sub-total is more than £10,000 but less than £20,000. 20

*Limit on carry-forward of unused allowances from earlier part of 2015-16*

- (6) Where the current tax year for the purposes of section 228A (carry-forward of annual allowance) is the post-alignment tax year –
- (a) if – 25
    - (i) the chargeable amount in the individual’s case for the pre-alignment tax year is the default chargeable amount, and
    - (ii) the excess mentioned in section 228A(5)(a) would otherwise be more than £40,000, 30
 

that excess is treated as being £40,000, and
  - (b) if –
    - (i) the chargeable amount in the individual’s case for the pre-alignment tax year is the alternative chargeable amount, and 35
    - (ii) the excess mentioned in section 228A(5)(a) would otherwise be more than £30,000,
 

that excess is treated as being £30,000.

*Further provisions about carry-forward of unused allowances*

- (7) Where the current tax year for the purposes of section 228A is the post-alignment tax year or the tax year 2016-17, 2017-18 or 2018-19, section 228A applies in relation to that current tax year as if in section 228A(3)(b) – 40
- (a) for “either or both of the two” there were substituted “any one or more of the three”, and 45
  - (b) for “(or, where there is an excess for both of those tax years, the excess for both tax years)” there were substituted “(or,

where there is an excess for two or all three of those tax years, the excess for both or all those tax years”.

- (8) Where the current tax year for the purposes of section 228A is the tax year 2016-17, 2017-18 or 2018-19 –
- (a) if – 5
    - (i) the chargeable amount in the individual’s case for the pre-alignment tax year is the default chargeable amount, and
    - (ii) the excess within section 228A(3)(b) in the case of the pre-alignment tax year would otherwise be more than £40,000, 10

that excess is treated as being £40,000 (and accordingly the amount aggregated under section 228A(5) in respect of that excess is so much of the £40,000 as has not been used up),
  - (b) if – 15
    - (i) the chargeable amount in the individual’s case for the pre-alignment tax year is the alternative chargeable amount, and
    - (ii) the excess within section 228A(3)(b) in the case of the pre-alignment year would otherwise be more than £30,000, 20

that excess is treated as being £30,000 (and accordingly the amount aggregated under section 228A(5) in respect of that excess is so much of the £30,000 as has not been used up), and
  - (c) in calculating for the purposes of section 228A(6) the amount of which of the excesses for different tax years had effect to reduce or eliminate the annual allowance charge for the post-alignment tax year, the amount of the excess for the pre-alignment tax year is to be taken to have done so before that for any other tax year and, subject to that, the amount of the excess for an earlier tax year is to be taken to have done so before that for a later year. 25 30

*Supplementary provision*

- (9) For the pre-alignment tax year, section 229(3) applies as if the reference to the end of the tax year were a reference to the end of the post-alignment tax year.” 35

PART 3

CALCULATION OF PENSION INPUT AMOUNTS FOR PERIODS ENDING IN 2015-16

- 7 Part 4 of FA 2004 is amended as follows.
- 8 In section 229 (total pension input amount), after subsection (4) insert – 40
- “(5) Subsection (2) is subject to section 237ZA (calculation of pension input amounts for input periods ending in 2015-16).”

9 After section 237 insert –

**“237ZA Pension input amounts for input periods ending in 2015-16**

- (1) This section applies where the tax year is the pre-alignment tax year or the post-alignment tax year (see section 228C(2)).

*Modified rules for cash balance, or defined benefits, arrangement* 5

- (2) The rules for calculating the pension input amount in respect of a cash balance arrangement, or a defined benefits arrangement, are modified as follows (and the rules for calculating the pension input amount in respect of a hybrid arrangement have effect accordingly).

*Single input amount to be calculated for combined period* 10

- (3) The pension input amount in respect of the arrangement is the time-apportioned percentage of any increase in the value of the individual’s rights under the arrangement during the period (“the combined period”) that consists of the combination of all pension input periods of the arrangement that end – 15

- (a) on or after 6 April 2015 but on or before 8 July 2015, or  
(b) on 5 April 2016.

- (4) To calculate the increase (if any) in the value of the individual’s rights under the arrangement during the combined period, apply (as the case may be) sections 230 to 232 (except section 230(1)), or sections 234 to 236A (except section 234(1)), as if – 20

- (a) references to the pension input period were references to the combined period,  
(b) the combined period were a pension input period of the arrangement, 25  
(c) 2.5% were the appropriate percentage specified in section 231(3) or 235(3), and  
(d) 2.5% were the percentage mentioned in paragraph (c) of the definition of “relevant percentage” given by section 230(5C) or 234(5C), 30

but paragraph (d) does not have effect for the purposes of the definition of “CPI percentage” given by section 234(5C).

*Apportioning input amount for combined period to tax years*

- (5) “The time-apportioned percentage” for the post-alignment tax year is – 35

$$\frac{272}{D} \times 100$$

and “the time-apportioned percentage” for the pre-alignment tax year is –

$$\frac{D - 272}{D} \times 100$$

where D is the number of days in the combined period. 40

*Calculation and apportionment rules modified in certain cases*

- (6) Subsections (3) to (5) have effect subject to the following provisions of this section.

*Modifications where individual is deferred member of scheme*

- (7) Subsections (8) to (10) apply if – 5
- (a) because of section 238ZA(2), a pension input period for the arrangement ends with 8 July 2015,
  - (b) apart from section 238ZA(2), that pension input period (“the cut-short period”) would have ended with a day (“the original last day”) after 8 July 2015 but before 5 April 2016, 10
  - (c) at or after the beginning of the cut-short period but not later than the original last day, or in an earlier pension input period for the arrangement, the individual becomes a deferred member of the pension scheme that the arrangement is under, and 15
  - (d) were the period –
    - (i) beginning with the day after the original last day, and
    - (ii) ending with 5 April 2016,a pension input period for the arrangement, the pension input amount in respect of the arrangement for that period would be nil by virtue of section 230(5B) or 234(5B). 20
- (8) Subsections (3) to (5) have effect as if the original last day, and not 5 April 2016, were the last day of the combined period (so that, in particular, D in subsection (5) is the number of days in the combined period as so shortened). 25
- (9) If the individual becomes a deferred member of the pension scheme in a pension input period for the arrangement earlier than the cut-short period –
- (a) the time-apportioned percentage for the post-alignment tax year is treated as being nil, and 30
  - (b) the time-apportioned percentage for the pre-alignment tax year is treated as being 100.
- (10) If the individual becomes a deferred member of the pension scheme at or after the beginning of the cut-short period but not later than the original last day, subsection (5) has effect as if for “272”, in each place, there were substituted the number of days in the period beginning with 9 July 2015 and ending with the original last day. 35

*Modification where first input period ends with 5 April 2016*

- (11) If the first pension input period for the arrangement ends with 5 April 2016 – 40
- (a) the time-apportioned percentage for the post-alignment tax year is treated as being 100, and
  - (b) the time-apportioned percentage for the pre-alignment tax year is treated as being 0.

*Alternative modifications where individual is deferred member of scheme* 45

- (12) Subsections (13) and (14) apply if –

- (a) subsections (8) to (10) do not apply,  
 (b) subsection (11) does not apply, and  
 (c) section 230(5B) or 234(5B), when applied separately to each of—
- (i) so much of the combined period as consists of the post-alignment tax year, and 5  
 (ii) the remainder of the combined period,  
 gives the result that the pension input amount in respect of the arrangement for one (but not the other) of those parts of the combined period is nil. 10
- (13) If the nil result is for so much of the combined period as consists of the post-alignment tax year—
- (a) the time-apportioned percentage for the post-alignment tax year is treated as being nil, and  
 (b) the time-apportioned percentage for the pre-alignment tax year is treated as being 100. 15
- (14) If the nil result is for so much of the combined period as precedes 9 July 2015—
- (a) the time-apportioned percentage for the pre-alignment tax year is treated as being nil, and 20  
 (b) the time-apportioned percentage for the post-alignment tax year is treated as being 100.”

## PART 4

## REDUCTION OF ANNUAL ALLOWANCE FOR HIGH-INCOME INDIVIDUALS

- 10 (1) In Part 4 of FA 2004, after section 228 insert— 25
- “228ZA Tapered reduction of annual allowance: high-income individual**
- (1) If the individual is a high-income individual for the tax year, section 228(1) has effect for the tax year in the individual’s case as if the amount (“A”) which it specifies for the tax year were reduced (but not below £10,000) by— 30
- $$(T - £150,000) \times \left( \frac{A - £10,000}{£60,000} \right)$$
- where T is the individual’s adjusted income for the tax year.
- (2) If the amount of the reduction under subsection (1) would otherwise not be a multiple of £1, it is to be rounded down to the nearest amount which is a multiple of £1. 35
- (3) The individual is a “high-income individual” for the tax year if—
- (a) the individual’s adjusted income for the tax year is more than £150,000, and  
 (b) the individual’s threshold income for the tax year is more than the amount given by £150,000 minus A. 40
- (4) The individual’s “adjusted income” for the tax year is—
- (a) the individual’s net income for the year (see Step 2 of the calculation in section 23 of ITA 2007), plus

- (b) the amount of any relief under section 193(4) or 194(1) deducted at that Step, plus
  - (c) the amount of any deductions made from employment income of the individual for the year –
    - (i) under section 193(2), or 5
    - (ii) under Chapter 2 of Part 5 of ITEPA 2003 in accordance with paragraph 51(2) of Schedule 36, plus
  - (d) an amount equal to –
    - (i) the total pension input amount calculated in accordance with section 229(1), less 10
    - (ii) the amount of any contributions paid by or on behalf of the individual during the year under registered pension schemes of which the individual is a member, less
  - (e) the amount of any lump sum which accrues in the year and in relation to which section 579A of ITEPA 2003 is applied by section 636A(4ZA) of ITEPA 2003. 15
- (5) The individual’s “threshold income” for the tax year is –
- (a) the individual’s net income for the year (see Step 2 of the calculation in section 23 of ITA 2007), plus 20
  - (b) any amount by which what would otherwise be general earnings or specific employment income of the individual for the year has been reduced by relevant salary sacrifice arrangements or relevant flexible remuneration arrangements, less 25
  - (c) the amount (before any deduction under section 192(1)) of any contribution paid in the year in respect of which the individual is entitled to be given relief under section 192 (relief at source), less
  - (d) the amount of any lump sum which accrues in the year and in relation to which section 579A of ITEPA 2003 is applied by section 636A(4ZA) of ITEPA 2003. 30
- (6) In subsection (5) –
- “relevant salary sacrifice arrangements” means arrangements –
    - (a) under which the individual gives up the right to receive general earnings or specific employment income in return for the making of relevant pension provision, and 35
    - (b) which are made on or after 9 July 2015 (and whether before or after the start of the employment concerned), and 40
  - “relevant flexible remuneration arrangements” means arrangements –
    - (a) under which the individual and an employer of the individual agree that relevant pension provision is to be made rather than the individual receive some description of employment income, and 45
    - (b) which are made on or after 9 July 2015 (and whether before or after the start of the employment concerned). 50

- (7) In subsection (6) “relevant pension provision” means the payment of contributions (or additional contributions) to a pension scheme in respect of the individual or otherwise (by an employer of the individual or any other person) to secure an increase in the amount of the benefits to which the individual or any person who is a dependant of, or is connected with, the individual is actually or prospectively entitled under a pension scheme. 5
- (8) In subsection (7) “increase” includes increase from nil.
- (9) Section 993 of ITA 2007 (meaning of “connected” persons) applies for the purposes of subsection (7). 10
- 228ZB Anti-avoidance in connection with section 228ZA**
- (1) Subsection (5) applies if there are arrangements in respect of which conditions A to C are met.
- (2) Condition A is that it is reasonable to assume that the main purpose, or one of the main purposes, of the arrangements is to reduce the amount of the reduction under section 228ZA(1) in the individual’s case – 15
- (a) for the tax year, or
- (b) for two or more tax years which include the tax year.
- (3) Condition B is that the arrangements involve either or both of the following – 20
- (a) reducing the individual’s adjusted income for the tax year, and
- (b) reducing the individual’s threshold income for the tax year.
- (4) Condition C is that the arrangements involve the reduction within subsection (3), or any of the reductions within subsection (3), being redressed by an increase in the individual’s adjusted income, or threshold income, for a different tax year. 25
- (5) The reduction under section 228ZA(1) in the individual’s case for the tax year is to be treated as being what it would be apart from the arrangements. 30
- (6) In subsection (2) “reduce” includes reduce to nil.
- (7) The increase mentioned in subsection (4) may be an increase in what would be the individual’s adjusted income, or threshold income, for the tax year 2015-16 if section 228ZA – 35
- (a) had effect for that year, and
- (b) did so as if the total pension input amount mentioned in section 228ZA(4)(d)(i) were the sum of the total pension input amounts for the pre-alignment and post-alignment tax years (see section 228C(2)). 40
- (8) In this section “arrangements” includes any agreement, understanding, scheme, transaction or series of transactions (whether or not legally enforceable).”
- (2) The amendment made by sub-paragraph (1) has effect for the tax year 2016-17 and subsequent tax years. 45

PART 5

OTHER AMENDMENTS

- 11 (1) Part 4 of FA 2004 is amended as follows.
- (2) In section 227 (annual allowance charge) –
- (a) in subsection (1) (charge arises if individual has a chargeable amount) after “has a” insert “non-zero”, and 5
  - (b) in subsection (1A) (determination of chargeable amount (if any)) omit “(if any)”.
- (3) In section 227ZA (the chargeable amount) after subsection (3) insert –
- “(4) If there is no such excess, the default chargeable amount is zero.” 10
- (4) The amendments made by this paragraph have effect for the tax year 2015-16 and subsequent tax years.

SCHEDULE 5

Section 25

ENTERPRISE INVESTMENT SCHEME

*Introductory* 15

- 1 Part 5 of ITA 2007 (enterprise investment scheme) is amended as follows.

*Limiting eligibility for relief to investments made before 2025*

- 2 (1) Section 157 (eligibility for EIS relief) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1), after paragraph (a) insert –
- “(aa) the shares are issued before 6 April 2025,”. 20
- (3) After that subsection insert –
- “(1A) The Treasury may, by regulations, amend subsection (1)(aa) to substitute a different date for the date for the time being specified there.”

*The investor* 25

- 3 In section 162 (overview of Chapter 2: the investor), omit the “and” at the end of paragraph (b) and after that paragraph insert –
- “(ba) existing shareholdings (see section 164A), and”.

- 4 After section 164 insert –

**“164A The existing shareholdings requirement** 30

- (1) If, at the time the relevant shares are issued, the investor holds any other shares in a company within subsection (2) (“C”), those other shares must be –
- (a) a risk finance investment, or
  - (b) subscriber shares which – 35

- (i) were issued to, and have since they were issued been continuously held by, the investor, or
    - (ii) were acquired by the investor at a time when C had not issued any shares other than subscriber shares and had not begun to carry on or make preparations for carrying on any trade or business. 5
  - (2) The companies referred to in subsection (1) are –
    - (a) the issuing company, and
    - (b) any company which is a qualifying subsidiary of the issuing company at the time the relevant shares are issued. 10
  - (3) Shares in a company are a “risk finance investment” if –
    - (a) they are issued by the company to the investor, and
    - (b) (at any time) the company provides a compliance statement under section 205, 257ED or 257PB in respect of the issue of shares which includes those shares.” 15
- 5 In section 166 (connection with issuing company), after subsection (1) insert –
- “(1A) But see section 252A(12) for provision which disapplies section 168.”

#### *General requirements*

- 6 In section 172 (overview of Chapter 3: general requirements) – 20
- (a) in paragraph (aa) for “capital schemes” substitute “finance investments”,
  - (b) after that paragraph insert –
    - “(aaa) the maximum risk finance investments at the issue date (see section 173AA), 25
    - (aab) the maximum risk finance investments at times during period B (see section 173AB),”,
  - (c) omit paragraph (ab), and
  - (d) after paragraph (c) insert –
    - “(ca) the permitted maximum age (see section 175A),”. 30
- 7 (1) Section 173A (the maximum amount raised annually through risk capital schemes requirement) is amended as follows.
- (2) For subsection (2) substitute –
- “(2) In subsection (1), the reference to relevant investments made in the issuing company includes – 35
- (a) a relevant investment made in any company that has at any time in the year mentioned there been a 51% subsidiary of the issuing company (including investments made in such a company before it became such a subsidiary but, if it is not such a subsidiary at the end of that year, not those made after it last ceased to be such a subsidiary), and 40
  - (b) any other relevant investment made in a company if –
    - (i) the money raised by the investment has been employed for the purposes of a trade carried on by that company or another person, and 45

- (ii) in that year, after the investment was made, the trade (or a part of it) became a relevant transferred trade (see subsection (2B)).
- (2A) If only a proportion of the money raised by a relevant investment is employed for the purposes of a trade which becomes a relevant transferred trade, the reference in subsection (2)(b) to the relevant investment is to be read as a reference to the corresponding proportion of that investment. 5
- (2B) Where –
  - (a) in the year mentioned in subsection (1) a trade is transferred – 10
    - (i) to the issuing company,
    - (ii) to a company that has at any time during that year been a 51% subsidiary of the issuing company, or
    - (iii) to a partnership of which a company within subparagraph (i) or (ii) is a member, 15  
(including where it is transferred to a company within subparagraph (ii), or a partnership of which such a company is a member, in that year before the company became such a subsidiary but, if the company is not such a subsidiary at the end of that year, not where it is transferred to such a company or partnership after the company last ceased to be such a subsidiary), and 20
  - (b) that trade or a part of it was previously (at any time) carried on by another person, 25  
the trade or part mentioned in paragraph (b) becomes a “relevant transferred trade” at the time it is transferred as mentioned in paragraph (a).”
- (3) In subsection (3) –
  - (a) after paragraph (b) insert – 30
    - “(ba) an investment is made in the company and (at any time) the company provides a compliance statement under section 257PB (tax relief for social investments) in respect of the investment, or”, and
  - (b) in paragraph (c), for “Community Guidelines on Risk Capital Investments in Small and Medium-sized Enterprises” substitute “European Commission’s Guidelines on State aid to promote risk finance investment”. 35
- (4) After subsection (4) insert –
  - “(5) Section 257KB applies in determining for those purposes when an investment within subsection (3)(ba) is made as it applies for the purposes of Part 5B (tax relief on social investments).” 40
- (5) After subsection (5) insert –
  - “(6) For the purposes of this section –
    - (a) references to a trade include a part of a trade (and references to the carrying on of a trade are to be construed accordingly); 45
    - (b) when determining the amount of money raised by a relevant investment which has been employed for the purposes of a

- trade such apportionments are to be made as are just and reasonable.
- (7) In this section “trade” includes –
- (a) any business or profession,
  - (b) so far as not within paragraph (a), the carrying on of research and development activities from which it is intended a trade will be derived or will benefit, and
  - (c) preparing to carry on a trade.”
- (6) In the heading, for “capital schemes” substitute “finance investments”.
- 8 After section 173A insert – 10
- “173AA Maximum risk finance investments at the issue date requirement**
- (1) The total amount of relevant investments made in the issuing company on or before the issue date must not exceed –
- (a) if the issuing company is a knowledge-intensive company at the issue date (see section 252A), £20 million, and
  - (b) in any other case, £12 million.
- (2) In subsection (1) the reference to relevant investments made in the issuing company includes –
- (a) any relevant investment made in any company that at the issue date is, or has at any time before that date been, a 51% subsidiary of the issuing company (including investments made in such a company before it became such a subsidiary but, if it is not such a subsidiary at the issue date, not investments made in it after it last ceased to be such a subsidiary), and
  - (b) any other relevant investment made in a company if –
    - (i) the money raised by the investment has been employed for the purposes of a trade carried on by that company or another person, and
    - (ii) after the investment was made, but on or before the issue date, that trade became a relevant transferred trade (see subsection (4)).
- (3) If only a proportion of the money raised by a relevant investment is employed for the purposes of a trade which becomes a relevant transferred trade, the reference in subsection (2)(b) to the relevant investment is to be read as a reference to the corresponding proportion of that investment.
- (4) Where –
- (a) at any time on or before the issue date, a trade is transferred –
    - (i) to the issuing company,
    - (ii) to a company that at the issue date is, or has at any time before that date been, a 51% subsidiary of the issuing company, or
    - (iii) to a partnership of which a company within subparagraph (i) or (ii) is a member,

- (including where it is transferred to a company within subparagraph (ii), or a partnership of which such a company is a member, before the company became such a subsidiary but, if the company is not such a subsidiary at the issue date, not where it is transferred to such a company or partnership after the company last ceased to be such a subsidiary), and 5
- (b) the trade or a part of it was previously (at any time) carried on by another person,  
the trade or part mentioned in paragraph (b) becomes a “relevant transferred trade” at the time it is transferred as mentioned in paragraph (a). 10
- (5) In this section –  
“the issue date” means the date on which the relevant shares are issued;  
“relevant investment” has the meaning given by section 173A(3), and section 173A(4) and (5) (which determines when certain investments are made) applies for the purposes of this section; 15  
and section 173A(6) and (7) (meaning of “trade” etc) applies for the purposes of this section as it applies for the purposes of section 173A. 20

#### **173AB Maximum risk finance investments during period B requirement**

- (1) The requirement of this section applies if condition A or B is met.
- (2) Condition A is that –  
(a) a company becomes a 51% subsidiary of the issuing company at any time during period B, 25  
(b) all or part of the money raised by the issue of the relevant shares is employed for the purposes of a qualifying business activity which consists wholly or in part of a trade carried on by that company, and  
(c) that trade (or a part of it) was carried on by that company before it became a 51% subsidiary as mentioned in paragraph (a). 30
- (3) Condition B is that all or part of the money raised by the issue of the relevant shares is employed for the purposes of a qualifying business activity which consists wholly or in part of a trade which, during period B, becomes a relevant transferred trade. 35
- (4) The requirement of this section is that, at all times in period B, the total of the relevant investments made in the issuing company before the time in question (“the relevant time”) must not exceed –  
(a) if the issuing company is a knowledge-intensive company at the issue date (see section 252A), £20 million, and 40  
(b) in any other case, £12 million.
- (5) In subsection (4) the reference to relevant investments made in the issuing company includes –  
(a) any relevant investment made in any company that at any time before the relevant time has been a 51% subsidiary of the issuing company (including investments made in a company before it became such a subsidiary but, if it is not such a 45

- subsidiary at the relevant time, not investments made in it after it last ceased to be such a subsidiary), and
- (b) any other relevant investments made in a company where –
- (i) the money raised by the investment has been employed for the purposes of a trade carried on by that company or another person, and
- (ii) after the investment was made, but before the relevant time, that trade (or a part of it) becomes a relevant transferred trade (see subsection (7)).
- (6) If only a proportion of the money raised by a relevant investment is employed for the purposes of a trade which became a relevant transferred trade, the reference in subsection (5)(b) to the relevant investment is to be read as a reference to the corresponding proportion of that investment.
- (7) Where –
- (a) before the relevant time, a trade is transferred –
- (i) to the issuing company,
- (ii) to a company that is at the relevant time, or has before that time been, a 51% subsidiary of the issuing company, or
- (iii) to a partnership of which a company within subparagraph (i) or (ii) is a member,
- (including where it is transferred to a company within subparagraph (ii), or a partnership of which such a company is a member, before the company became such a subsidiary but, if the company is not such a subsidiary at the relevant time, not where it is transferred to such a company or partnership after the company last ceased to be such a subsidiary), and
- (b) the trade or a part of it was previously (at any time) carried on by another person,
- the trade or part mentioned in paragraph (b) becomes a “relevant transferred trade” at the time it is transferred as mentioned in paragraph (a).
- (8) In this section –
- “the issue date” means the date on which the relevant shares are issued, and
- “relevant investment” has the meaning given by section 173A(3), and section 173A(4) and (5) (which determines when certain investments are made) applies for the purposes of this section;
- and section 173A(6) and (7) (meaning of “trade” etc) applies for the purposes of this section as it applies for the purposes of section 173A.”
- 9 Omit section 173B (the spending of money raised by SEIS investment requirement).
- 10 (1) Section 174 (the purpose of the issue requirement) is amended as follows.
- (2) The existing text becomes subsection (1).

- (3) In that subsection, after “activity” insert “so as to promote business growth and development”.
- (4) After that subsection insert –
- “(2) For this purpose “business growth and development” means the growth and development of – 5
- (a) if the issuing company is a single company, the business of that company, and
- (b) if the issuing company is a parent company, what would be the business of the group if the activities of the group companies taken together were regarded as one business.” 10
- 11 (1) Section 175 (the use of money raised requirement) is amended as follows.
- (2) For subsection (1A) substitute –
- “(1ZA) Employing money raised by the issue of the relevant shares (whether on its own or together with other money) on the acquisition, directly or indirectly, of – 15
- (a) an interest in another company such that a company becomes a 51% subsidiary of the issuing company,
- (b) a further interest in a company which is a 51% subsidiary of the issuing company,
- (c) a trade, 20
- (d) intangible assets employed for the purposes of a trade, or
- (e) goodwill employed for the purposes of a trade,
- does not amount to employing that money for the purposes of a qualifying business activity.
- (1ZB) The Treasury may by regulations provide that subsection (1ZA) does not apply in relation to acquisitions of intangible assets which are of a description specified, or which occur in circumstances specified, in the regulations. 25
- (1ZC) For the purposes of subsections (1ZA) and (1ZB) –
- “goodwill” has the same meaning as in Part 8 of CTA 2009 (see section 715(3)); 30
- “intangible assets” means any asset which falls to be treated as an intangible asset in accordance with generally accepted accountancy practice;
- and section 173A(6) and (7) (meaning of “trade” etc) applies as it applies for the purposes of section 173A. 35
- (1A) Also, otherwise employing money on the acquisition of shares or stock in a company does not of itself amount to employing the money for the purposes of a qualifying business activity.”
- 12 After section 175 insert – 40
- “175A The permitted maximum age requirement**
- (1) The requirement of this section is that, if the relevant shares are issued after the initial investing period, condition A or B must be met.
- (2) “The initial investing period” means – 45

- (a) where the issuing company is a knowledge-intensive company at the issue date, the period of 10 years beginning with the relevant first commercial sale, and
- (b) in any other case, the period of 7 years beginning with that sale. 5
- (3) Condition A is that –
- (a) a relevant investment was made in the issuing company before the end of the initial investing period, and
- (b) some or all of the money raised by that investment was employed for the purposes of the relevant qualifying business activity (or a part of it). 10
- (4) Condition B is that the total amount of relevant investments made in the issuing company in a period of 30 consecutive days which includes the issue date is at least 50% of the average turnover amount. 15
- (5) “The relevant first commercial sale” means the earliest of the following –
- (a) the first commercial sale made by the issuing company;
- (b) the first commercial sale made by a company that is at the issue date, or before that date has been, a 51% subsidiary of the issuing company (including a sale made by a company before it became such a subsidiary but, if it is not such a subsidiary at the issue date, not a sale made after it last ceased to be such a subsidiary); 20
- (c) the first commercial sale made by any person who previously (at any time) carried on a trade which was subsequently carried on, on or before the issue date, by – 25
- (i) the issuing company, or
- (ii) a company that is at the issue date, or before that date has been, a 51% subsidiary of the issuing company, (including a trade subsequently carried on by such a company before it became such a subsidiary but, if it is not such a subsidiary at the issue date, not a trade which it carried on only after it last ceased to be such a subsidiary); 30
- (d) the first commercial sale made by a company which becomes a 51% subsidiary of the issuing company after the issue date in circumstances where all or part of the money raised by the issue of the relevant shares is employed for the purposes of an activity carried on by that subsidiary (including a sale made by such a company before it became such a subsidiary); 40
- (e) the first commercial sale made by any person who previously (at any time) carried on a trade which was subsequently carried on by a company mentioned in paragraph (d) (including a trade carried on by such a company before it became such a subsidiary); 45
- (f) if the money raised by the issue of the relevant shares (or any part of it) is employed for the purposes of a trade which has been transferred, after the issue date, to the issuing company or a 51% subsidiary of that company (or a partnership of which the issuing company or such a subsidiary is a member), having previously (at any time) been carried on by 50

- another person, the first commercial sale made by that other person.
- (6) “The average turnover amount” means –
- (a) if the issuing company is a single company at the issue date, one fifth of the total turnover of the company for the five year period which ends –
    - (i) immediately before the beginning of the last accounts filing period, or
    - (ii) if later, 12 months before the issue date, and
  - (b) if the issuing company is a parent company at the issue date, one fifth of the total group turnover for that five year period.
- (7) In this section –
- “first commercial sale” has the same meaning as in the European Commission’s Guidelines on State aid to promote risk finance investments (as those guidelines may be amended or replaced from time to time);
  - “the issue date” means the date on which the relevant shares are issued;
  - “the last accounts filing period” means the last period for filing (within the meaning of section 442 of the Companies Act 2006) for the issuing company which ends before the date on which the relevant shares are issued;
  - “relevant investment” has the meaning given by section 173A(3), and section 173A(4) and (5) (which determines when certain investments are made) applies for the purposes of this section;
  - “relevant qualifying business activity” means the qualifying business activity for which the money raised by the issue of the relevant shares is employed;
  - “the total group turnover” for a period is the sum of –
    - (a) the issuing company’s turnover for that period, and
    - (b) the turnover for that period of each company which at the issue date is a qualifying subsidiary of the issuing company;
  - “turnover” has the meaning given by section 474(1) of the Companies Act 2006 and is to be determined by reference to the accounts of companies and amounts recognised for accounting purposes (and such apportionments of those amounts as are just and reasonable are to be made for the purpose of determining a company’s turnover for a period); and section 173A(6) and (7) (meaning of “trade” etc) applies for the purposes of this section as it applies for the purposes of section 173A.”

*The issuing company*

- 13 In section 186A (the number of employees requirement) –
- (a) in subsections (1) and (2) for “250” substitute “the permitted limit”, and

- (b) after subsection (3) insert –
- “(3A) “The permitted limit” means –
- (a) if the issuing company is a knowledge-intensive company (see section 252A) at the time the relevant shares are issued, 500, and
- (b) in any other case, 250.
- (3B) The Treasury may by regulations amend subsection (3A)(a) or (b) by substituting a different number for the number for the time being specified there.”
- 14 Omit section 200 (power to amend certain provisions of Chapter 4 of Part 5 of ITA 2007 by Treasury order). 10

*Repayment etc of share capital*

- 15 (1) Section 224 (repayments etc of share capital to other persons) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (4), after paragraph (a) insert –
- “(aa) causes any SEIS relief attributable to that person’s shares in the issuing company to be withdrawn or reduced by virtue of –
- (i) section 257FA (disposal of shares), or
- (ii) section 257FH(2)(a) (receipt of value by virtue of repayment of share capital etc),”.
- (3) In subsection (5) –
- (a) after “subsection (4)(a),” insert “(aa),” and
- (b) after paragraph (a) insert –
- “(aa) section 257FE,”.

*Powers to amend Part 5 of ITA 2007*

- 16 After section 251 insert –

*“Powers to amend***251A Powers to amend Chapters 2 to 4 by Treasury regulations**

- (1) The Treasury may by regulations add to, repeal or otherwise amend any provision of –
- (a) Chapter 2 (the requirements to be met in relation to the investor),
- (b) Chapter 3 (the general requirements to be met in respect of the relevant shares), or
- (c) Chapter 4 (the requirements to be met by the issuing company for it to be a qualifying company in relation to the relevant shares).
- (2) Regulations under this section may –
- (a) make different provision for different cases or purposes;
- (b) contain incidental, supplemental, consequential and transitional provision and savings.

- (3) The provision which may be made as a result of subsection (2)(b) includes provision amending any provision of this or any other Act (including an Act passed after this Act).
- (4) This section is without prejudice to any other power to amend any provision of this Part. 5
- (5) A statutory instrument containing regulations under this section may not be made unless a draft of it has been laid before and approved by a resolution of the House of Commons.”

*“Knowledge-intensive companies”*

17 After section 252 insert – 10

**“252A Meaning of “knowledge-intensive company”**

- (1) For the purposes of this Part, the issuing company is a “knowledge-intensive company” at the time the relevant shares are issued if the company meets –
  - (a) one or both of the operating costs conditions (see subsections (2) and (3)), and 15
  - (b) one or both of –
    - (i) the innovation condition (see subsection (5)), and
    - (ii) the skilled employee condition (see subsection (8)).
- (2) The first operating costs condition is that in at least one of the relevant three preceding years at least 15% of the relevant operating costs constituted expenditure on research and development or innovation. 20
- (3) The second operating costs condition is that in each of the relevant three preceding years at least 10% of the relevant operating costs constituted such expenditure. 25
- (4) In subsections (2) and (3) –
  - “relevant operating costs” means –
    - (a) if the issuing company is a single company at the time the relevant shares are issued, the operating costs of that company, and 30
    - (b) if the issuing company is a parent company at the time the relevant shares are issued, the sum of –
      - (i) the operating costs of the issuing company, and 35
      - (ii) the operating costs of each company which is a qualifying subsidiary of the issuing company at that time;
  - “the relevant three preceding years” means the three consecutive years the last of which ends – 40
    - (a) immediately before the beginning of the last accounts filing period, or
    - (b) if later, 12 months before the date on which the relevant shares are issued.
- (5) “The innovation condition” is – 45
  - (a) where the issuing company is a single company, that –

- 
- (i) the issuing company is engaged in intellectual property creation at the time the relevant shares are issued, and
    - (ii) it is reasonable to assume that, within 10 years of the issue of the relevant shares, one or a combination of –
      - (a) the exploitation of relevant intellectual property held by the company, and
      - (b) business which results from new or improved products, processes or services utilising relevant intellectual property held by the company,

will form the greater part of its business;
  - (b) where the issuing company is a parent company, that –
    - (i) the parent company or one or more of its qualifying subsidiaries (or both that company and one or more of those subsidiaries) is or are engaged in intellectual property creation at the time the relevant shares are issued, and
    - (ii) it is reasonable to assume that, within 10 years of the issue of the relevant shares, one or a combination of –
      - (a) the exploitation of relevant intellectual property held by the parent company or any of its qualifying subsidiaries, and
      - (b) business which results from new or improved products, processes or services utilising relevant intellectual property held by the parent company or any of its qualifying subsidiaries,

will form the greater part of what would be the business of the group if the activities of the group companies taken together are regarded as one business.
- (6) For the purposes of subsection (5), a company is engaged in intellectual property creation if –
- (a) relevant intellectual property is being created by the company, or has been created by it within the previous three years,
  - (b) the company is taking, or preparing to take, steps in order that relevant intellectual property will be created by it, or
  - (c) the company is carrying on activity which is the subject of a written evaluation which –
    - (i) has been prepared by an independent expert, and
    - (ii) includes a statement to the effect that, in the opinion of the expert, it is reasonable to assume that relevant intellectual property will, in the foreseeable future, be created by the company.
- (7) For the purposes of this section –
- (a) intellectual property is “relevant” intellectual property, in relation to a company, if the whole or greater part (in terms of value) of it is created by the company, and

- (b) intellectual property is created by a company if it is created in circumstances in which the right to exploit it vests in the company (whether alone or jointly with others).
- (8) “The skilled employee condition” is that throughout period B—
  - (a) if the issuing company is a single company, the FTE skilled employee number is at least 20% of the FTE employee number, and 5
  - (b) if the issuing company is a parent company, the FTE group skilled employee number is at least 20% of the FTE group employee number. 10
- (9) But, in subsection (8), the reference to period B does not include any period during which the issuing company, by virtue of section 182 (companies in administration or receivership), is not regarded as having ceased to meet the trading requirement.
- (10) In this section— 15
  - “FTE employee number” for a company is the full-time equivalent employee number determined in accordance with section 186A(3);
  - “FTE group employee number” means the sum of—
    - (a) the FTE employee number for the issuing company, 20
    - and
    - (b) the FTE employee number for each of its qualifying subsidiaries;
  - “FTE group skilled employee number” means the sum of—
    - (a) the FTE skilled employee number for the issuing company, and 25
    - (b) the FTE skilled employee number for each of its qualifying subsidiaries;
  - “FTE skilled employee number” for a company is determined in accordance with section 186A(3) in the same way as the full-time equivalent employee number except that only employees of the company who— 30
    - (a) hold a relevant HE qualification, and
    - (b) are engaged directly in research and development or innovation activities carried on— 35
      - (i) if the issuing company is a single company, by that company, or
      - (ii) if the issuing company is a parent company, by that company or any qualifying subsidiary of that company, 40
  - are to be taken into account;
  - “independent expert”, in relation to an evaluation of activity of a company, means an individual who—
    - (a) is not connected with the issuing company,
    - (b) holds a relevant HE qualification, and 45
    - (c) is an expert in the area of research and development or innovation being or to be pursued by the company in question;
  - “intellectual property” has the meaning given by section 195(6);

- “the last accounts filing period” means the last period for filing (within the meaning of section 442 of the Companies Act 2006) for the issuing company which ends before the date on which the relevant shares were issued;
- “operating costs”, of a company for a period of account, means expenses of the company which are recognised as expenses in the company’s profit and loss account or income statement for that period, other than expenses relating to transactions between that company and another company at a time when both companies are members of the same group (but see also subsection (11));
- “relevant HE qualification” means—
- (a) a qualification which is at level 7, or a higher level, of the framework for higher education qualifications in England, Wales and Northern Ireland (as that framework may be amended or replaced from time to time),
  - (b) a qualification which is at level 11, or a higher level, of the framework for qualifications of higher education institutions in Scotland (as that framework may be amended or replaced from time to time), or
  - (c) a comparable qualification to one within paragraph (a) or (b).
- (11) Such apportionments as are just and reasonable are to be made to amounts recognised in a company’s profit and loss account or income statement for the purpose of determining the company’s operating costs for a year.
- (12) When determining whether an individual is connected with the issuing company for the purposes of this section, section 168 is to be ignored.
- (13) The Treasury may by regulations amend this section for the purposes of adding, amending or removing a condition which must be met for a company to be a knowledge-intensive company.
- (14) A statutory instrument containing regulations under subsection (13) may not be made unless a draft of it has been laid before and approved by a resolution of the House of Commons.”

*Consequential repeals*

- 18 (1) In consequence of paragraphs 6(c) and 9, in Schedule 6 to FA 2012, omit paragraphs 11 and 13.
- (2) In consequence of paragraph 13, in Schedule 7 to FA 2012, omit paragraph 12.
- (3) In consequence of paragraph 14, in Schedule 7 to FA 2012, omit paragraph 16.

*Commencement and transitional provision*

- 19 The amendments made by paragraphs 6(c), 9 and 18(1) have effect in relation to shares issued on or after 6 April 2015.

- 20 The amendments made by paragraph 15 have effect in relation to any repayment, redemption or repurchase of share capital, or payment to a member, on or after 6 April 2014.
- 21 (1) The amendments made by paragraphs 3 to 5, 6 (other than paragraph (c)), 7, 8, 10 to 12, 13 and 18(2) and (3) have effect in relation to shares issued on or after the day on which this Act is passed. 5
- (2) But nothing in sub-paragraph (1) prevents shares issued before that day constituting “relevant investments” for the purposes of determining whether the requirements of sections 173A, 173AA, 173AB and 175A are met in relation to shares issued on or after that day. 10

SCHEDULE 6

Section 26

VENTURE CAPITAL TRUSTS

*Introductory*

- 1 Part 6 of ITA 2007 (venture capital trusts) is amended as follows.

*Limiting eligibility for relief to investments made before 2025* 15

- 2 (1) Section 261 (eligibility for VCT relief) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (3), before paragraph (a) insert –  
 “(za) the shares are issued before 6 April 2025,”.
- (3) After subsection (4) insert –  
 “(5) The Treasury may, by regulations, amend subsection (3)(za) to substitute a different date for the date for the time being specified there.” 20

*Requirements for the giving of VCT approval*

- 3 (1) Section 274 (requirements for the giving of approval) is amended as follows.
- (2) In the table in subsection (2), at the end insert – 25

“The permitted maximum age condition	The company has not made and will not make an investment, in the relevant period, in a company which breaches the permitted maximum age limit.	30
The no business acquisition condition	The company has not made and will not make an investment, in the relevant period, in a company which breaches the prohibition on business acquisitions.”	35

- (3) In subsection (3), omit the “and” at the end of paragraph (e) and after

paragraph (f) insert –

- “(g) the permitted maximum age condition by section 280C, and
- (h) the no business acquisition condition by section 280D.”

*VCT approvals*

- 4 (1) Section 280B (the investment limits condition) is amended as follows. 5
- (2) In subsection (2) for the words from “if” to the end substitute “if one or more of the following applies –
- (a) the total annual investment in the relevant company exceeds the amount for the time being specified in section 292A(1);
  - (b) the total investment in the relevant company at the investment date exceeds the amount specified in – 10
    - (i) if the relevant company is a knowledge-intensive company (see section 331A) at the investment date, section 292AA(1)(a), and
    - (ii) in any other case, section 292AA(1)(b); 15
  - (c) condition A or B applies and the total investment in the relevant company at any time during the 5-year post-investment period exceeds the amount specified in –
    - (i) if the relevant company is a knowledge-intensive company at the investment date, section 292AB(4)(a), and 20
    - (ii) in any other case, section 292AB(4)(b).”
- (3) After subsection (2) insert –
- “(2A) In this section –
- “the investment date” means the date the current investment is made; 25
  - “the 5-year post-investment period” means the period of 5 years beginning with the day after the investment date.”
- (4) For subsection (3) substitute –
- “(3) For the purposes of subsection (2)(a), the total annual investment in the relevant company is the sum of – 30
- (a) the amount of the current investment,
  - (b) the total amount of other relevant investments made (whether or not by the investor), in the year ending with the day on which the current investment is made, in – 35
    - (i) the relevant company, or
    - (ii) a company that has at any time in that year been a 51% subsidiary of the relevant company, (including investments made in such a company before it became such a subsidiary but, if it is not such a subsidiary at the end of that year, not investments made in it after it last ceased to be such a subsidiary), and 40
  - (c) the total amount of any other relevant investments (whether or not made by the investor) which are relevant imported investments. 45

- (3A) For the purposes of subsection (2)(b), the total investment in the relevant company at the investment date is the sum of –
- (a) the amount of the current investment,
  - (b) the total amount of other relevant investments made (whether or not by the investor), on or before the investment date, in –
    - (i) the relevant company, or
    - (ii) a company that is at the investment date, or has at any time before that date been, a 51% subsidiary of the relevant company,  
(including investments made in such a company before it became such a subsidiary but, if it is not such a subsidiary at the investment date, not investments made in it after it last ceased to be such a subsidiary), and
  - (c) the total amount of any other relevant investments (whether or not made by the investor) which are relevant imported investments.
- (3B) For the purposes of subsection (2)(c) –
- (a) condition A is that –
    - (i) a company becomes a 51% subsidiary of the relevant company during the 5-year post-investment period,
    - (ii) all or part of the money raised by the current investment is employed for the purposes of an activity which consists wholly or in part of a trade carried on by that company, and
    - (iii) that trade (or a part of it) was carried on by that company before it became a 51% subsidiary as mentioned in sub-paragraph (i);
  - (b) condition B is that all or part of the money raised by the current investment is employed for the purposes of an activity which consists wholly or in part of a trade which, during the 5-year post-investment period, becomes a relevant transferred trade (see subsection (3F)).
- (3C) For the purposes of subsection (2)(c), the total investment in the relevant company at a time during the 5-year post-investment period (“the relevant time”) is the sum of –
- (a) the amount of the current investment,
  - (b) the total amount of other relevant investments made, before the relevant time (whether or not by the investor), in –
    - (i) the relevant company, or
    - (ii) a company that at the relevant time is, or before that time has been, a 51% subsidiary of the relevant company,  
(including investments made in such a company before it became such a subsidiary but, if it is not such a subsidiary at the relevant time, not investments made in it after it last ceased to be such a subsidiary), and
  - (c) the total amount of any other relevant investments (whether or not made by the investor) which are relevant imported investments.

- (3D) In this section “relevant imported investment” means a relevant investment –
- (a) which is made in a company at a qualifying time, and
  - (b) the money raised by which is employed for the purposes of a trade carried on by that company or another person,
- where, at a qualifying time but after that investment was made, that trade (or a part of it) became a relevant transferred trade (see subsection (3F)). 5
- (3E) In subsection (3D) “a qualifying time” means –
- (a) for the purposes of subsection (3), any time in the year mentioned in that subsection, 10
  - (b) for the purposes of subsection (3A), any time on or before the investment date,
  - (c) for the purposes of subsection (3C), any time before the relevant time. 15
- (3F) For the purposes of this section if –
- (a) a trade is transferred –
    - (i) to the relevant company,
    - (ii) to a company that is a 51% subsidiary of the relevant company, or 20
    - (iii) to a partnership of which a company within subparagraph (i) or (ii) is a member,
 (including where it is transferred to a company within subparagraph (ii), or a partnership of which such a company is a member, before the company became such a subsidiary), and 25
  - (b) the trade, or a part of it, was previously (at any time) carried on by another person,
- the trade or part mentioned in paragraph (b) becomes a “relevant transferred trade” at the time it is transferred as mentioned in paragraph (a).” 30
- (5) In subsection (4) –
- (a) omit “or” at the end of paragraph (b) and after that paragraph insert –
    - “(ba) an investment is made in the company and (at any time) the company provides a compliance statement under section 257PB (tax relief for social investments) in respect of the investment, or”, and 35
  - (b) in paragraph (c) for “Community Guidelines on Risk Capital Investments in Small and Medium-sized Enterprises” substitute “European Commission’s Guidelines on State aid to promote risk finance investment”. 40
- (6) In subsection (5) for “and (3)” substitute “to (3E)”.
- (7) After subsection (5) insert –
- “(6) Section 257KB applies in determining for those purposes when an investment within subsection (4)(ba) is made as it applies for the purposes of Part 5B (tax relief on social investments). 45
  - (7) If only a proportion of the money raised by a relevant investment is employed for the purposes of a trade which became a relevant

transferred trade as mentioned in subsection (3D), only the corresponding proportion of the relevant investment falls within that subsection.

- (8) For the purposes of this section –
- (a) references to a trade include a part of a trade (and references to the carrying on of a trade are to be construed accordingly), and 5
  - (b) when determining the amount of money raised by a relevant investment which has been employed for the purposes of a trade such apportionments are to be made as are just and reasonable. 10
- (9) In this section “trade” includes –
- (a) any business or profession,
  - (b) so far as not within paragraph (a), the carrying on of research and development activities from which it is intended a trade will be derived or will benefit, and 15
  - (c) preparing to carry on a trade.”

*The first commercial sale condition and the no business acquisition condition*

5 After section 280B insert –

**“280C The permitted maximum age condition”** 20

- (1) This section applies for the purposes of the permitted maximum age condition.
- (2) Where a company makes an investment in another company (“the relevant company”), that investment (“the current investment”) breaches the permitted maximum age limits if – 25
- (a) the investment is made after the initial investing period, and
  - (b) neither condition A nor B is met.
- (3) “The initial investing period” means –
- (a) where the relevant company is a knowledge-intensive company on the investment date, the period of 10 years beginning with the relevant first commercial sale, and 30
  - (b) in any other case, the period of 7 years beginning with that sale.
- (4) Condition A is that –
- (a) a relevant investment was made in the relevant company before the end of the initial investing period, and 35
  - (b) some or all of the money raised by that investment was employed for the purposes of the same activities as the money raised by the current investment (or some of those activities). 40
- (5) Condition B is that the sum of –
- (a) the amount of the current investment, and
  - (b) the total amount of any other relevant investments made in the relevant company in a period of 30 consecutive days which includes the investment date, 45

is at least 50% of the average turnover amount.

- (6) “The relevant first commercial sale” means the earliest of the following—
- (a) the first commercial sale made by the relevant company,
  - (b) the first commercial sale made by a company that is at the investment date, or before that date has been, a 51% subsidiary of the relevant company (including a sale made by a company before it became such a subsidiary but, if it is not such a subsidiary at the investment date, not a sale made after it last ceased to be such a subsidiary),
  - (c) the first commercial sale made by any person who previously (at any time) carried on a trade which was subsequently carried on, on or before the investment date, by—
    - (i) the relevant company, or
    - (ii) a company that is at the investment date, or before that date has been, a 51% subsidiary of the relevant company,
      - (including a trade subsequently carried on by such a company before it became such a subsidiary but, if it is not such a subsidiary at the investment date, not a trade which it carried on only after it last ceased to be such a subsidiary);
  - (d) the first commercial sale made by a company which becomes a 51% subsidiary of the relevant company after the investment date in circumstances where all or part of the money raised by the current investment is employed for the purposes of an activity carried on by that subsidiary (including a sale made by such a company before it became such a subsidiary);
  - (e) the first commercial sale made by any person who previously (at any time) carried on a trade which was subsequently carried on by a company mentioned in paragraph (d) (including a trade carried on by such a company before it became such a subsidiary);
  - (f) if the money raised by the current investment or any part of it is employed for the purposes of a trade which has been transferred after the investment date to the relevant company or a 51% subsidiary of that company (or to a partnership of which the relevant company or such a subsidiary is a member), having previously been carried on (at any time) by another person, the first commercial sale made by that other person.
- (7) “The average turnover amount” means—
- (a) if the relevant company is a single company at the investment date, one fifth of the total turnover of the company for the five year period which ends—
    - (i) immediately before the beginning of the last accounts filing period, or
    - (ii) if later, 12 months before the investment date, and
  - (b) if the relevant company is a parent company at the investment date, one fifth of the total group turnover for that five year period.

- (8) In this section –
- “first commercial sale” has the same meaning as in the European Commission’s Guidelines on State aid to promote risk finance investments (as those guidelines may be amended or replaced from time to time); 5
  - “the investment date” means the day on which the current investment is made;
  - “the last accounts filing period” means the last period for filing (within the meaning of section 442 of the Companies Act 2006) for the relevant company which ends before the date on which the current investment is made; 10
  - “relevant investment” has the meaning given by section 280B(4) (and section 280B(5) and (6) apply for the purposes of this section as they apply for section 280B(2) to (3E));
  - “the total group turnover” for a period is the sum of – 15
    - (a) the relevant company’s turnover for that period, and
    - (b) the turnover for that period of each company which at the time the relevant holding is issued is a 51% subsidiary of the relevant company;
  - “turnover” has the meaning given by section 474(1) of the Companies Act 2006 and is to be determined by reference to the accounts of companies and amounts recognised for accounting purposes (and such apportionments of those amounts as are just and reasonable are to be made for the purpose of determining a company’s turnover for a period); 20
- and section 280B(8) and (9) (meaning of “trade” etc) applies for the purposes of this section as it applies for the purposes of section 280B. 25

#### **280D The no business acquisition condition**

- (1) This section applies for the purposes of the no business acquisition condition. 30
- (2) Where a company makes an investment in another company (“the relevant company”), that investment breaches the prohibition on business acquisitions if any of the money raised by it is employed (whether on its own or together with other money) on the acquisition, directly or indirectly, of – 35
  - (a) an interest in another company such that a company becomes a 51% subsidiary of the relevant company,
  - (b) a further interest in a company which is a 51% subsidiary of the relevant company,
  - (c) a trade, 40
  - (d) intangible assets previously employed for the purposes of a trade, or
  - (e) goodwill employed for the purposes of a trade.
- (3) The Treasury may by regulations provide that subsection (2) does not apply in relation to acquisitions of intangible assets which are of a description specified, or which occur in circumstances specified, in the regulations. 45
- (4) In this section –

“goodwill” has the same meaning as in Part 8 of CTA 2009 (see section 715(3));

“intangible assets” means any asset which falls to be treated as an intangible asset in accordance with generally accepted accountancy practice;

and section 280B(8) and (9) apply for the purposes of this section as they apply for the purposes of section 280B.”

5

### *Qualifying holdings*

- 6 (1) Section 286 (qualifying holdings: introduction) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (2), omit the “and” at the end of paragraph (a) and after paragraph (b) insert “, and
- (c) those shares or securities were first issued by the relevant company in order to raise money for the purposes of promoting growth and development of –
- (i) if the relevant company is a single company, the business of that company, and
- (ii) if it is a parent company, what would be the business of the group if the activities of the group companies taken together were regarded as one business.”
- (3) In subsection (3) –
- (a) in paragraph (ea), for “capital schemes” substitute “finance investments”,
- (b) after that paragraph insert –
- “(eaa) the maximum risk finance investments when the relevant holding is issued (see section 292AA),
- (eab) the maximum risk finance investments during the 5-year post-investment period (see section 292AB),”
- (c) omit paragraph (eb),
- (d) after paragraph (g) insert –
- “(ga) the permitted company age requirement (see section 294A),” and
- (e) after paragraph (ja) insert –
- “(jb) the proportion of skilled employees (see section 297B),”.
- 7 (1) Section 292A (the maximum amount raised annually through risk capital schemes requirement) is amended as follows.
- (2) For subsection (2) substitute –
- “(2) In subsection (1), the reference to relevant investments made in the relevant company includes –
- (a) relevant investments made in any company that has at any time in the year mentioned there been a 51% subsidiary of the relevant company (including investments made in such a company before it became such a subsidiary but, if it was not a subsidiary at the end of that year, not those made after it last ceased to be such a subsidiary), and
- (b) any other relevant investment made in a company if –

10

15

20

25

30

35

40

45

- (i) the money raised by the investment has been employed for the purposes of a trade carried on by that company or another person, and
    - (ii) in that year, after that investment was made, the trade (or a part of it) became a relevant transferred trade (see subsection (2B)).
- (2A) If only a proportion of the money raised by a relevant investment is employed for the purposes of a trade which becomes a relevant transferred trade, the reference in subsection (2)(b) to the relevant investment is to be read as a reference to the corresponding proportion of that investment.
- (2B) Where—
  - (a) in the year mentioned in subsection (1) a trade is transferred—
    - (i) to the relevant company,
    - (ii) to a company that is, or has at any time during that year been, a 51% subsidiary of the relevant company, or
    - (iii) to a partnership of which a company within subparagraph (i) or (ii) is a member,  
(including where it is transferred to a company within subparagraph (ii), or a partnership of which such a company is a member, at a time in the year before the company became such a subsidiary but not where it is transferred to such a company or partnership in that year after the company last ceased to be such a subsidiary), and
  - (b) that trade or a part of it was previously (at any time) carried on by another person,  
the trade or part mentioned in paragraph (b) becomes a “relevant transferred trade” at the time it is transferred as mentioned in paragraph (a).”
- (3) In subsection (3) —
  - (a) after paragraph (b) insert—
    - “(ba) an investment is made in the company and (at any time) the company provides a compliance statement under section 257PB (tax relief for social investments) in respect of the investment, or”, and
  - (b) in paragraph (c), for “Community Guidelines on Risk Capital Investments in Small and Medium-sized Enterprises” substitute “European Commission’s Guidelines on State aid to promote risk finance investment”.
- (4) In subsection (4) for “and (2)” substitute “to (2B)”.
- (5) After subsection (4) insert—
  - “(4A) Section 257KB applies in determining for those purposes when an investment within subsection (3)(ba) is made as it applies for the purposes of Part 5B (tax relief on social investments).”
- (6) In subsection (5), after “205” insert “, 257ED or 257PB”.

- (7) After subsection (6) insert –
- “(7) Section 280B(8) and (9) (meaning of “trade” etc) applies for the purposes of this section as it applies for the purposes of section 280B.”
- (8) In the heading, for “capital schemes” substitute “finance investments”. 5
- 8 After section 292A insert –
- “292AA Maximum risk finance investments when relevant holding is issued requirement**
- (1) The total amount of relevant investments made in the relevant company on or before the investment date must not exceed – 10
- (a) if the relevant company is a knowledge-intensive company at the investment date (see section 331A), £20 million, and
- (b) in any other case, £12 million.
- (2) In subsection (1), the reference to relevant investments made in the relevant company includes – 15
- (a) relevant investments made in any company that is at the investment date, or has at any time before that date been, a 51% subsidiary of the relevant company (including investments made in such a company before it became such a subsidiary but, if it is not such a subsidiary at the investment date, not investments made in it after it last ceased to be such a subsidiary), and 20
- (b) any other relevant investment made in a company if –
- (i) the money raised by the investment has been employed for the purposes of a trade carried on by that company or another person, and 25
- (ii) after the investment was made, but on or before the investment date, that trade became a relevant transferred trade (see subsection (4)).
- (3) If only a proportion of the money raised by a relevant investment is employed for the purposes of a trade which becomes a relevant transferred trade, the reference in subsection (2)(b) to the relevant investment is to be read as a reference to the corresponding proportion of that investment. 30
- (4) Where – 35
- (a) at any time on or before the investment date, a trade is transferred –
- (i) to the relevant company,
- (ii) to a company that at the investment date is, or has at any time before that date been, a 51% subsidiary of the relevant company, or 40
- (iii) to a partnership of which a company within subparagraph (i) or (ii) is a member,
- (including where it is transferred to a company within subparagraph (ii), or a partnership of which such a company is a member, before the company became such a subsidiary but, if the company is not such a subsidiary at the investment date, not where it is transferred to such a company or 45

- partnership after the company last ceased to be such a subsidiary), and
- (b) the trade or a part of it was previously (at any time) carried on by another person,
- the trade or part mentioned in paragraph (b) becomes a “relevant transferred trade” at the time it is transferred as mentioned in paragraph (a). 5
- (5) In this section –
- “the investment date” means the date the relevant holding is issued; 10
- “relevant investment” has the meaning given by section 292A(3), and section 292A(4) and (4A) (which determine when certain investments are made) applies for the purposes of this section;
- and section 280B(8) and (9) (meaning of “trade” etc) applies for the purposes of this section as it applies for the purposes of section 280B. 15
- (6) Subsection (7) applies if, by virtue of the provision of a compliance statement under section 205, 257ED or 257PB, the requirement of this section is not met.
- (7) The requirement is to be treated as having been met throughout the period – 20
- (a) beginning with the investment date, and
- (b) ending with the time the compliance statement was provided.
- 292AB Maximum risk finance investments during the 5-year post-investment period requirement** 25
- (1) The requirement of this section applies if condition A or B is met.
- (2) Condition A is that –
- (a) a company becomes a 51% subsidiary of the relevant company at any time during the 5-year post-investment period, 30
- (b) all or part of the money raised by the issue of the relevant holding is employed for the purposes of a relevant qualifying activity which consists wholly or in part of a trade carried on by that company, and 35
- (c) that trade (or a part of it) was carried on by that company before it became a 51% subsidiary as mentioned in paragraph (a).
- (3) Condition B is that all or part of the money raised by the issue of the relevant holding is employed for the purposes of a relevant qualifying activity which consists wholly or in part of a trade which, during the 5-year post-investment period, becomes a relevant transferred trade (see subsection (7)). 40
- (4) The requirement of this section is that, at all times during the 5-year post-investment period, the total of the relevant investments made in the relevant company before the time in question (“the relevant time”) must not exceed – 45

- (a) if the relevant company is a knowledge-intensive company at the investment date (see section 331A), £20 million, and
- (b) in any other case, £12 million.
- (5) In subsection (4) the reference to relevant investments made in the relevant company includes – 5
- (a) any relevant investment made in any company that has at any time before the relevant time been a 51% subsidiary of the relevant company (including investments made in that company before it became such a subsidiary but, if it is not such a subsidiary at the relevant time, not investments made in it after it last ceased to be such a subsidiary), and 10
- (b) any other relevant investments made in a company where – 15
- (i) the money raised by the investment has been employed for the purposes of a trade carried on by that company or another person, and
- (ii) after that investment was made, but before the relevant time, that trade (or a part of it) became a relevant transferred trade (see subsection (7)).
- (6) If only a proportion of the money raised by a relevant investment is employed for the purposes of a trade which became a relevant transferred trade, the reference in subsection (5)(b) to the relevant investment is to be read as a reference to the corresponding proportion of that investment. 20
- (7) Where –
- (a) a trade is transferred – 25
- (i) to the relevant company,
- (ii) to a company that at the relevant time is, or has before that time been, a 51% subsidiary of the relevant company, or
- (iii) to a partnership of which a company within subparagraph (i) or (ii) is a member, 30
- (including where it is transferred to a company within subparagraph (ii), or a partnership of which such a company is a member, before the company became such a subsidiary but, if the company is not such a subsidiary at the relevant time, not where it is transferred to such a company or partnership after the company last ceased to be such a subsidiary), and 35
- (b) the trade or a part of it was previously (at any time) carried on by another person,
- the trade or part mentioned in paragraph (b) becomes a “relevant transferred trade” at the time it is transferred as mentioned in paragraph (a). 40
- (8) In this section –
- “5-year post-investment period” means the period of 5 years beginning with the day after the investment date; 45
- “the investment date” means the date on which the relevant holding is issued;
- “relevant investment” has the meaning given by section 292A(3), and section 292A(4) and (4A) (which determines

- when certain investments are made) applies for the purposes of this section;
- and section 280B(8) and (9) (meaning of “trade” etc) applies for the purposes of this section as it applies for the purposes of section 280B.
- (9) Subsection (10) applies if, by virtue of the provision of a compliance statement under section 205, 257ED or 257PB, the requirement of this section is not met. 5
- (10) The requirement is to be treated as having been met throughout the period – 10
- (a) beginning with the investment date, and
- (b) ending with the time the compliance statement was provided.”
- 9 Omit section 292B (the spending of money raised by SEIS investment requirement).
- 10 In section 293 (the use of the money raised requirement), for subsection (5A) substitute – 15
- “(5ZA) Employing money raised by the issue of the relevant holding (whether on its own or together with other money) on the acquisition, directly or indirectly, of – 20
- (a) an interest in another company such that a company becomes a 51% subsidiary of the relevant company,
- (b) a further interest in a company which is a 51% subsidiary of the relevant company,
- (c) a trade,
- (d) intangible assets employed for the purposes of a trade, or 25
- (e) goodwill employed for the purposes of a trade,
- does not amount to employing the money for the purposes of a relevant qualifying activity.
- (5ZB) The Treasury may by regulations provide that subsection (5ZA) does not apply in relation to acquisitions of intangible assets which are of a description specified, or which occur in circumstances specified, in the regulations. 30
- (5ZC) For the purposes of subsections (5ZA) and (5ZB) – 35
- “goodwill” has the same meaning as in Part 8 of CTA 2009 (see section 715(3));
- “intangible assets” means any asset which falls to be treated as an intangible asset in accordance with generally accepted accountancy practice;
- and section 280B(8) and (9) (meaning of “trade” etc) applies for the purposes of this section as it applies for the purposes of section 280B. 40
- (5A) Also, otherwise employing money on the acquisition of shares in a company does not of itself amount to employing the money for the purposes of a relevant qualifying activity.”

11 After section 294 insert –

**“294A The permitted company age requirement**

- (1) The requirement of this section is that, if the relevant holding is issued after the initial investing period, condition A or B must be met. 5
- (2) “The initial investing period” means –
- (a) where the relevant company is a knowledge-intensive company at the investment date, the period of 10 years beginning with the relevant first commercial sale, and
  - (b) in any other case, the period of 7 years beginning with that sale. 10
- (3) Condition A is that –
- (a) a relevant investment was made in the relevant company before the end of the initial investing period, and
  - (b) some or all of the money raised by that investment was employed for the purposes of the relevant qualifying activity (or a part of it). 15
- (4) Condition B is that the total amount of relevant investments made in the relevant company in a period of 30 consecutive days which includes the investment date is at least 50% of the average turnover amount. 20
- (5) “The relevant first commercial sale” means the earliest of the following –
- (a) the first commercial sale made by the relevant company,
  - (b) the first commercial sale made by a company that is at the investment date, or before that date has been, a 51% subsidiary of the relevant company (including a sale made by a company before it became such a subsidiary but, if it is not such a subsidiary at the investment date, not a sale made after it last ceased to be such a subsidiary), 25
  - (c) the first commercial sale made by any person who previously (at any time) carried on a trade which was subsequently carried on, on or before the investment date, by –
    - (i) the relevant company, or
    - (ii) a company that is at the investment date, or before that date has been, a 51% subsidiary of the relevant company, 30
 (including a trade subsequently carried on by such a company before it became such a subsidiary but, if it not such a subsidiary at the investment date, not a trade which it carried on only after it last ceased to be such a subsidiary); 40
  - (d) the first commercial sale made by a company which becomes a 51% subsidiary of the relevant company after the investment date in circumstances where all or part of the money raised by the issue of the relevant holding is employed for the purposes of an activity carried on by that subsidiary (including a sale made by such a company before it became such a subsidiary); 45

- (e) the first commercial sale made by any person who previously (at any time) carried on a trade which was subsequently carried on by a company mentioned in paragraph (d) (including a trade carried on by such a company before it became such a subsidiary); 5
  - (f) if the money raised by the issue of the relevant holding (or any part of it) is employed for the purposes of a trade which has been transferred after the investment date to the relevant company or a 51% subsidiary of that company (or to a partnership of which the relevant company or such a subsidiary is a member), having previously (at any time) been carried on by another person, the first commercial sale made by that other person. 10
- (6) “The average turnover amount” means –
- (a) if the relevant company is a single company at the investment date, one fifth of the total turnover of the company for the five year period which ends –
    - (i) immediately before the beginning of the last accounts filing period, or
    - (ii) if later, 12 months before the investment date, and 20
  - (b) if the relevant company is a parent company at the investment date, one fifth of the total group turnover for that five year period.
- (7) In this section –
- “first commercial sale” has the same meaning as in the European Commission’s Guidelines on State aid to promote risk finance investments (as those guidelines may be amended or replaced from time to time); 25
  - “the investment date” means the date the relevant holding is issued; 30
  - “the last accounts filing period” means the last period for filing (within the meaning of section 442 of the Companies Act 2006) for the relevant company which ends before the date on which the relevant holding is issued;
  - “relevant investment” has the meaning given by section 292A(3), and section 292A(4) and (4A) (which determines when certain investments are made) applies for the purposes of this section; 35
  - “relevant qualifying activity” means the qualifying activity for which the money raised by the issue of the relevant holding is employed; 40
  - “the total group turnover” for a period is the sum of –
    - (a) the relevant company’s turnover for that period, and
    - (b) the turnover for that period of each company which at the time the relevant holding is issued is a 51% subsidiary of the relevant company; 45
  - “turnover” has the meaning given by section 474(1) of the Companies Act 2006 and is to be determined by reference to the accounts of companies and amounts recognised for accounting purposes (and such apportionments of those 50

- amounts as are just and reasonable are to be made for the purpose of determining a company's turnover for a period); and section 280B(8) and (9) (meaning of "trade" etc) applies for the purposes of this section as it applies for the purposes of section 280B." 5
- 12 In section 297A (the number of employees requirement) –
- (a) in subsections (1) and (2) for "250" substitute "the permitted limit", and
  - (b) after subsection (3) insert –
    - "(3A) "The permitted limit" means – 10
      - (a) if the relevant company is a knowledge-intensive company at the time the relevant holding is issued (see section 331A), 500, and
      - (b) in any other case, 250.
    - (3B) The Treasury may by regulations amend subsection (3A)(a) or (b) by substituting a different number for the number for the time being specified there." 15
- 13 After that section insert –
- "297B The proportion of skilled employees requirement**
- (1) The requirement of this section is that, where the conditions in subsection (2) are met, at all times in the period of 3 years beginning with the issue of the relevant holding – 20
    - (a) if the relevant company is a single company, the FTE skilled employee number must be at least 20% of the FTE employee number, and 25
    - (b) if the relevant company is a parent company, the FTE group skilled employee number must be at least 20% of the FTE group employee number.
  - (2) The conditions are that –
    - (a) the requirements one or more of sections 292AA, 294A and 297A (the maximum risk finance investments when relevant holding is issued requirement and the number of employees requirement) is or are met only by reason of the relevant company being a knowledge-intensive company at the time the relevant holding was issued, and 30
    - (b) the innovation condition in section 331A(6) was not met by the relevant company at that time. 35
  - (3) The requirement of this section is not to be regarded as failing to be met at a time when the relevant company, by virtue of section 292 (companies in administration or receivership), is not regarded as having ceased to meet the trading requirement. 40
  - (4) In this section "FTE employee number", "FTE group employee number", "FTE skilled employee number" and "FTE group skilled employee number" have the meaning given by section 331A(10) (meaning of "knowledge-intensive company")." 45

*Power to amend Chapter 4 of Part 6*

- 14 Omit section 311 (power to amend Chapter 4 of Part 6).

*Interpretation of Chapter 4 of Part 6*

- 15 In section 313 (interpretation of Chapter 4 of Part 6), in subsection (5), at the end insert – 5
- “But section 993 does not apply for the purposes of the definition of “independent expert” in section 331A(10).”

*Power to amend Chapters 3 and 4 of Part 6 of ITA 2007*

- 16 After section 330A insert –

“Power to amend Part 10

**330B Powers to amend Chapters 3 and 4 by Treasury regulations**

- (1) The Treasury may by regulations add to, repeal or otherwise amend any provision of Chapter 3 or 4.
- (2) Regulations under this section may – 15
- (a) make different provision for different cases or purposes;
- (b) contain incidental, supplemental, consequential and transitional provision and savings.
- (3) The provision which may be made as a result of subsection (2)(b) includes provision amending any provision of this or any other Act (including an Act passed after this Act). 20
- (4) This section is without prejudice to any other power to amend any provision of this Part.
- (5) A statutory instrument containing regulations under this section may not be made unless a draft of it has been laid before and approved by a resolution of the House of Commons.” 25

*Interpretation of Part 6*

- 17 After section 331 insert –

**“331A Meaning of “knowledge-intensive company”**

- (1) For the purposes of this Part, the relevant company is a “knowledge-intensive company” at the applicable time if the company meets – 30
- (a) one or both of the operating costs conditions (see subsections (3) and (4)), and
- (b) one or both of –
- (i) the innovation condition (see subsection (6)), and
- (ii) the skilled employee condition (see subsection (9)). 35
- (2) “The applicable time” means –
- (a) in relation to references to a knowledge-intensive company in section 280B or 280C, the date the current investment (within the meaning of the section in question) is made, and

- (b) in relation to any other reference to a knowledge-intensive company, the date the relevant holding is issued.
- (3) The first operating costs condition is that in at least one of the relevant three preceding years at least 15% of the relevant operating costs constituted expenditure on research and development or innovation. 5
- (4) The second operating costs condition is that in each of the relevant three preceding years at least 10% of the relevant operating costs constituted such expenditure.
- (5) In subsections (3) and (4) – 10  
“relevant operating costs” means –  
(a) if the relevant company is a single company at the applicable time, the operating costs of that company, and  
(b) if the relevant company is a parent company at the applicable time, the sum of – 15  
(i) the operating costs of the relevant company, and  
(ii) the operating costs of each company which is a qualifying subsidiary of the relevant company at that time; 20  
“the relevant three preceding years” means the three consecutive years the last of which ends –  
(a) immediately before the beginning of the last accounts filing period, or 25  
(b) if later, 12 months before the applicable time.
- (6) “The innovation condition” is –  
(a) where the relevant company is a single company, that –  
(i) the relevant company is engaged in intellectual property creation at the applicable time, and 30  
(ii) it is reasonable to assume that, within 10 years of the applicable time, one or a combination of –  
(a) the exploitation of relevant intellectual property held by the company, and  
(b) business which results from new or improved products, processes or services utilising relevant intellectual property held by the company, 35  
will form the greater part of its business;
- (b) where the relevant company is a parent company, that – 40  
(i) the parent company or one or more of its qualifying subsidiaries (or both that company and one or more of those subsidiaries) is or are engaged in intellectual property creation at the applicable time, and  
(ii) it is reasonable to assume that, within 10 years of the applicable time, one or a combination of – 45  
(a) the exploitation of relevant intellectual property held by the parent company or any of its qualifying subsidiaries, and

- (b) business which results from new or improved products, processes or services utilising relevant intellectual property held by the parent company or any of its qualifying subsidiaries, 5
- will form the greater part of the business of the group, if the activities of the group companies taken together are regarded as one business.
- (7) For the purposes of subsection (6), a company is engaged in intellectual property creation if – 10
- (a) relevant intellectual property is being created by the company, or has been created by it within the previous three years,
- (b) the company is taking, or preparing to take, steps in order that relevant intellectual property will be created by it, or 15
- (c) the company is carrying on activity which is the subject of a written evaluation which –
- (i) has been prepared by an independent expert, and
- (ii) includes a statement to the effect that, in the opinion of the expert, it is reasonable to assume that relevant intellectual property will, in the foreseeable future, be created by the company. 20
- (8) For the purposes of this section –
- (a) intellectual property is “relevant” intellectual property, in relation to a company, if the whole or greater part (in terms of value) of it is created by the company, and 25
- (b) intellectual property is created by a company if it is created in circumstances in which the right to exploit it vests in the company (whether alone or jointly with others).
- (9) “The skilled employee condition” is that at the applicable time – 30
- (a) if the relevant company is a single company, the FTE skilled employee number is at least 20% of the FTE employee number, and
- (b) if the relevant company is a parent company, the FTE group skilled employee number is at least 20% of the FTE group employee number. 35
- (10) In this section –
- “FTE employee number” for a company is the full-time equivalent employee number determined in accordance with section 297A(3); 40
- “FTE group employee number” means the sum of –
- (a) the FTE employee number for the relevant company, and
- (b) the FTE employee number for each of its qualifying subsidiaries; 45
- “FTE group skilled employee number” means the sum of –
- (a) the FTE skilled employee number for the relevant company, and
- (b) the FTE skilled employee number for each of its qualifying subsidiaries; 50

- “FTE skilled employee number” for a company is determined in accordance with section 297A(3) in the same way as the full-time equivalent employee number except that only employees of the company who –
- (a) hold a relevant HE qualification, and 5
  - (b) are engaged directly in research and development or innovation activities carried on –
    - (i) if the relevant company is a single company, by that company, or
    - (ii) if the relevant company is a parent company, by that company or any qualifying subsidiary of that company, 10
- are to be taken into account;
- “independent expert”, in relation to an evaluation of activity of a company, means an individual who – 15
- (a) is not connected with the relevant company,
  - (b) holds a relevant HE qualification, and
  - (c) is an expert in the area of research and development or innovation being or to be pursued by the company in question, 20
- and, for the purposes of paragraph (a), sections 167, 170 and 171 (but not section 168) apply to determine if an individual is connected with the relevant company (with references in those sections to the issuing company read as references to the relevant company); 25
- “intellectual property” has the meaning given by section 306(6);
- “the last accounts filing period” means the last period for filing (within the meaning of section 442 of the Companies Act 2006) for the relevant company which ends before the applicable time; 30
- “operating costs”, of a company for a period, means expenses of the company which are recognised as expenses in the company’s profit and loss account or income statement for that period, other than expenses relating to transactions between that company and another company at a time when both companies are members of the same group (but see also subsection (11)); 35
- “relevant HE qualification” means –
- (a) a qualification which is at level 7, or a higher level, of the framework for higher education qualifications in England, Wales and Northern Ireland (as that framework may be amended or replaced from time to time), 40
  - (b) a qualification which is at level 11, or a higher level, of the framework for qualifications of higher education institutions in Scotland (as that framework may be amended or replaced from time to time), or 45
  - (c) a comparable qualification to one within paragraph (a) or (b).
- (11) Such apportionments as are just and reasonable are to be made to amounts recognised in a company’s profit and loss account or 50

income statement for the purpose of determining the company’s operating costs for a year.

- (12) The Treasury may by regulations amend this section for the purposes of adding, amending or removing a condition which must be met for a company to be a knowledge-intensive company. 5
- (13) A statutory instrument containing regulations under subsection (12) may not be made unless a draft of it has been laid before and approved by a resolution of the House of Commons.”

*Repeal of saving for investment of “protected money”*

- 18 Paragraph 21(2) and (3) of Schedule 8 to FA 2012 (which prevents section 293(5A) of ITA 2007 applying in relation to protected money) is repealed. 10

*Consequential repeal*

- 19 (1) In consequence of paragraphs 6(3)(c) and 9, in Schedule 6 to FA 2012, omit paragraphs 15 and 17
- (2) In consequence of paragraph 12, in Schedule 8 to that Act, omit paragraph 9. 15
- (3) In consequence of paragraph 16, in Schedule 8 to that Act, omit paragraph 14.

*Application and transitional provision*

- 20 (1) The amendments made by paragraphs 3 to 5 have effect in relation to investments made on or after the day on which this Act is passed. 20
- (2) The amendments made by paragraphs 6(3)(c), 9 and 19(1) have effect for the purposes of determining whether shares or securities issued on or after 6 April 2015 are to be regarded as comprised in a company’s qualifying holdings.
- (3) The amendments made by paragraphs 6 (except sub-paragraph (3)(c)), 7, 8, 10 to 13, 18 and 19(2) and (3) have effect for the purposes of determining whether shares or securities issued on or after the day on which this Act is passed are to be regarded as comprised in a company’s qualifying holdings. 25
- (4) But nothing in sub-paragraphs (1) and (3) prevents investments made before the day on which this Act is passed constituting a “relevant investment” – 30
- (a) for the purposes of section 280B of ITA 2007 for the purposes of determining whether the investment limits condition in section 274 of that Act is breached by an investment made on or after the day on which this Act is passed,
- (b) for the purposes of section 280C of that Act for the purposes of determining whether the permitted maximum age condition in section 274 of that Act is breached by an investment made on or after the day on which this Act is passed, or 35
- (c) for the purposes of section 292A, 292AA, 292AB or 294A of that Act for the purposes of determining whether shares or securities issued on or after that day are to be regarded as comprised in a company’s qualifying holdings. 40

SCHEDULE 7

Section 31

LOAN RELATIONSHIPS AND DERIVATIVE CONTRACTS

PART 1

LOAN RELATIONSHIPS: AMENDMENTS OF PARTS 5 AND 6 OF CTA 2009

- |   |  |    |
|---|--|----|
| 1 | Part 5 of CTA 2009 (loan relationships) is amended as follows.   | 5  |
| 2 | In section 306 (overview of Chapter 3 of Part 5), in subsection (2) –  |    |
|   | (a) before paragraph (a) insert –  |    |
|   | “(za) makes provision about the matters in respect of which amounts are to be brought into account (see section 306A),”  | 10 |
|   | (b) in paragraph (c), for “policy” substitute “basis”, and   |    |
|   | (c) for paragraph (g) substitute –   |    |
|   | “(g) makes provision about cases where amounts are recognised even though companies are not, or have ceased to be, parties to loan relationships (see section 330A), and”. | 15 |
| 3 | After section 306 insert –   |    |
|   | <i>“Matters in respect of which amounts are to be brought into account</i>   |    |
|   | <b>306A Matters in respect of which amounts to be brought into account</b>   |    |
|   | (1) The matters in respect of which amounts are to be brought into account for the purposes of this Part in respect of a company’s loan relationships are –                | 20 |
|   | (a) profits and losses of the company that arise to it from its loan relationships and related transactions (excluding interest or expenses),                              | 25 |
|   | (b) interest under those relationships, and  |    |
|   | (c) expenses incurred by the company under or for the purposes of those relationships and transactions.  |    |
|   | (2) Expenses are only treated as incurred as mentioned in subsection (1)(c) if they are incurred directly –  | 30 |
|   | (a) in bringing any of the loan relationships into existence,  |    |
|   | (b) in entering into or giving effect to any of the related transactions,  |    |
|   | (c) in making payments under any of those relationships or as a result of any of those transactions, or  | 35 |
|   | (d) in taking steps to ensure the receipt of payments under any of those relationships or in accordance with any of those transactions.                                    |    |
|   | (3) For the treatment of pre-loan relationship and abortive expenses, see section 329.”  | 40 |
| 4 | (1) Section 307 (general principles about the bringing into account of credits and debits) is amended as follows.  |    |

- (2) In subsection (2), after “this Part” insert “in respect of the matters mentioned in section 306A(1)”.
- (3) After subsection (2) insert –
- “(2A) Subsections (2B) and (2C) apply if an accounting period of a company does not coincide with one or more of its periods of account. 5
- (2B) The amounts referred to in subsection (2) are to be determined by apportionment in accordance with section 1172 of CTA 2010 (time basis).
- (2C) But if it appears that apportionment in accordance with that section would work unreasonably or unjustly for an accounting period, subsection (2) is to be read as referring to amounts that would have been recognised in determining the company’s profit or loss for that period in accordance with generally accepted accounting practice if accounts had been drawn up for that period.” 10 15
- (4) Omit subsections (3) to (5).
- (5) For subsection (6) substitute –
- “(6) This section is subject to the following provisions of this Part.”
- 5 (1) Section 308 (amounts recognised in determining a company’s profit or loss) is amended as follows. 20
- (2) In subsection (1), for the words from “recognised”, in the second place, onwards substitute “that is recognised in the company’s accounts for the period as an item of profit or loss”.
- (3) After subsection (1) insert –
- “(1A) The reference in subsection (1) to an amount recognised in the company’s accounts for the period as an item of profit or loss includes a reference to an amount that – 25
- (a) was previously recognised as an item of other comprehensive income, and
- (b) is transferred to become an item of profit or loss in determining the company’s profit or loss for the period. 30
- (1B) In subsections (1) and (1A) “item of profit or loss” and “item of other comprehensive income” each has the meaning that it has for accounting purposes.”
- (4) Omit subsections (2) and (3). 35
- 6 In section 310 (power to make regulations about recognised amounts) –
- (a) in subsections (1)(a) and (b) and (2), omit “or (2)”, and
- (b) omit subsection (5).
- 7 (1) Section 313 (basis of accounting) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1), omit the words from “and, in particular,” onwards. 40
- (3) In subsection (2) –
- (a) omit “sections 307(3) and (4) and”,
- (b) omit paragraphs (e) and (f),

- (c) at the end of paragraph (g) insert “and”, and  
 (d) omit paragraph (i) and the “and” immediately before it.
- (4) Omit subsection (3).
- (5) In subsection (4), for the words from “shown” onwards substitute “measured in the company’s balance sheet at its amortised cost using the effective interest method, but with that amortised cost being adjusted as necessary where the loan relationship is the hedged item under a designated fair value hedge”. 5
- (6) After subsection (4) insert –
- “(4A) In subsection (4) each of the following expressions has the meaning that it has for accounting purposes – 10  
     “amortised cost”, in relation to assets or liabilities;  
     “the effective interest method”, in relation to the measurement of assets or liabilities.”
- (7) For subsection (5) substitute – 15
- “(5) In this Part “fair value accounting” means a basis of accounting under which –  
     (a) assets and liabilities are measured in the company’s balance sheet at their fair value, and  
     (b) changes in the fair value of assets and liabilities are recognised as items of profit or loss.” 20
- (8) For subsection (6) substitute –
- “(6) For the meaning of “fair value”, see section 476(1).  
 (7) In this Part each of the following has the meaning that it has for accounting purposes – 25  
     “designated fair value hedge”;  
     “hedged item”.”
- 8 In the italic heading before section 315, for “policy” substitute “basis”.
- 9 (1) Section 315 (introduction to sections 316 to 319) is amended as follows.
- (2) For subsection (1) substitute – 30
- “(1) Sections 316 and 318 (adjustments on change of accounting basis) apply if –  
     (a) a company changes, from one period of account or accounting period to the next, the basis of accounting on which credits and debits relating to its loan relationships or any of them are calculated for the purposes of this Part, 35  
     (b) the change of basis –  
         (i) is made in order to comply with a provision made by or under this Part requiring those credits and debits to be determined on a particular basis of accounting, or 40  
         (ii) results from a change of the company’s accounting policy,  
     (c) the change of basis is not made in order to comply with amending legislation not applicable to the previous period,

- (d) the old basis accorded with the law or practice applicable in relation to the period before the change, and
    - (e) the new basis accords with the law and practice applicable to the period after the change.”
  - (3) In subsection (2) – 5
    - (a) for “to 319” substitute “and 318”, and
    - (b) in paragraph (a), for “those periods of account” substitute “the periods mentioned in subsection (1)”.
  - (4) Omit subsection (3).
  - (5) In the heading, for “to 319” substitute “and 318”. 10
- 10 For section 316 substitute –
- “316 Change of basis of accounting involving change of value**
- (1) If there is a difference between –
    - (a) the tax-adjusted carrying value of an asset or liability at the end of the earlier period, and 15
    - (b) the tax-adjusted carrying value of that asset or liability at the beginning of the later period,a credit or debit (as the case may be) of an amount equal to the difference must be brought into account for the purposes of this Part for the later period in the same way as a credit or debit which is brought into account in determining the company’s profit or loss for that period in accordance with generally accepted accounting practice. 20
  - (2) This section does not apply so far as the credit or debit falls to be brought into account apart from this section.” 25
- 11 Omit section 317 (carrying value).
- 12 (1) Section 318 (change of accounting policy following cessation of loan relationship) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1), for paragraph (b) substitute –
    - “(b) section 330A (company is not, or has ceased to be, party to loan relationship) applied to the cessation, and”. 30
  - (3) For subsections (2) and (3) substitute –
    - “(2) A credit or debit (as the case may be) of an amount equal to the difference must be brought into account for the purposes of this Part for the later period in the same way as a credit or debit which is brought into account in determining the company’s profit or loss for that period in accordance with generally accepted accounting practice.” 35
  - (4) In subsection (4), for “Subsections (2) and (3) do” substitute “Subsection (2) does”. 40
  - (5) For subsection (5) substitute –
    - “(5) In this section “the amount outstanding in respect of the loan relationship” means –

- 
- (a) so much of the recognised deferred income or recognised deferred loss from the loan relationship as has not been represented by credits or debits brought into account under this Part in respect of the relationship, and
- (b) any amounts relating to the matters mentioned in section 306A(1) in respect of the loan relationship that have in accordance with generally accepted accounting practice been recognised in the company's accounts as items of other comprehensive income and not transferred to become items of profit or loss." 5 10
- (6) After subsection (6) insert –
- “(7) In determining what amounts fall within subsection (5)(b) at the beginning or end of a period, it is to be assumed that the accounting policy applied in drawing up the company's accounts for the period was also applied in previous periods. 15
- (8) But if the company's accounts for the period are in accordance with generally accepted accounting practice drawn up on an assumption as to the accounting policy in previous periods which differs from that mentioned in subsection (7), that different assumption applies in determining what amounts fall within subsection (5)(b) at the beginning or end of the period.” 20
- (7) In the heading, for “policy” substitute “basis”.
- 13 (1) Section 320 (credits and debits treated as relating to capital expenditure) is amended as follows.
- (2) For subsections (1) to (3) substitute – 25
- “(1) This section applies if –
- (a) an amount for an accounting period in respect of a company's loan relationship relates to any of the matters in section 306A(1),
- (b) generally accepted accounting practice allows the amount to be treated in the company's accounts as an amount recognised in determining the carrying value of an asset or liability, and 30
- (c) any profit or loss for corporation tax purposes in relation to that asset or liability will not fall to be calculated in accordance with generally accepted accounting practice. 35
- (2) Despite that treatment, the amount is to be brought into account as a credit or debit for the purposes of this Part, for the accounting period for which it is recognised, in the same way as an amount which is brought into account as a credit or debit in determining the company's profit or loss for that period in accordance with generally accepted accounting practice. 40
- (3) But subsection (2) does not apply to an amount which relates to an intangible fixed asset to which an election under section 730 (writing down at fixed rate: election for fixed-rate basis) applies.” 45
- (3) Omit subsection (4).

- (4) For subsections (5) and (6) substitute –
- “(5) If an amount relating to an asset or liability is brought into account as mentioned in subsection (2) as a debit, no debit may be brought into account for the purposes of this Part in respect of –
- (a) the writing down of so much of the value of the asset or liability as is attributable to that debit, or 5
  - (b) so much of any amortisation or depreciation representing a writing-off of that value as is attributable to that debit.”
- 14 After section 320 insert –
- “320A Amounts recognised in other comprehensive income and not transferred to profit or loss 10**
- (1) This section applies if –
- (a) in a period of account an asset or liability representing a loan relationship of a company ceases in accordance with generally accepted accounting practice to be recognised in the company’s accounts, 15
  - (b) amounts relating to the matters mentioned in section 306A(1) in respect of that loan relationship have in accordance with generally accepted accounting practice been recognised in the company’s accounts as items of other comprehensive income and have not subsequently been transferred to become items of profit or loss, and 20
  - (c) condition A or B is met.
- (2) Condition A is that, at the time when the asset or liability ceases to be recognised, it is not expected that the amounts mentioned in subsection (1)(b) will in future be transferred to become items of profit or loss. 25
- (3) Condition B is that, at any later time, it is no longer expected that the amounts mentioned in subsection (1)(b) will in future be transferred to become items of profit or loss. 30
- (4) The amounts mentioned in subsection (1)(b) –
- (a) must be brought into account for the purposes of this Part as credits or debits for the period of account in which the time mentioned in subsection (2) or (3) falls, in the same way as a credit or debit which is brought into account in determining the company’s profit or loss for that period in accordance with generally accepted accounting practice, and 35
  - (b) must not be brought into account for a later period of account even if they are subsequently transferred to become items of profit or loss for the later period. 40
- (5) This section applies in a case where part of an asset or liability representing a loan relationship of a company ceases to be recognised in the company’s accounts as it applies in a case where the whole of an asset or liability representing a loan relationship ceases to be recognised, but as if the reference in subsection (1)(b) to amounts in respect of the loan relationship were a reference to so much of those amounts as are attributable to that part of the asset or liability. 45

- (6) In determining what amounts fall within subsection (1)(b) at any time in an accounting period, it is to be assumed that the accounting policy applied in drawing up the company's accounts for the period was also applied in previous accounting periods.
- (7) But if the company's accounts for the period are in accordance with generally accepted accounting practice drawn up on an assumption as to the accounting policy in previous accounting periods which differs from that mentioned in subsection (6), that different assumption applies in determining what amounts fall within subsection (1)(b) at the time in question. 5  
10
- (8) In this section "item of profit or loss" and "item of other comprehensive income" each has the meaning that it has for accounting purposes."
- 15 Omit section 321 (credits and debits recognised in equity).
- 16 (1) Section 322 (credits not required to be brought into account in respect of release of debt in certain cases) is amended as follows. 15
- (2) In subsection (2), for "D" substitute "E".
- (3) Omit subsection (4A).
- (4) After subsection (5A) insert –
- “(5B) Condition E is that – 20
- (a) the release is neither a deemed release, as defined by section 358(3), nor a release of relevant rights, and
- (b) immediately before the release, it is reasonable to assume that, without the release and any arrangements of which the release forms part, there would be a material risk that at some time within the next 12 months the company would be unable to pay its debts.” 25
- (5) After subsection (6) insert –
- “(6A) In subsections (4) and (5B)(a), "relevant rights" has the same meaning as in section 358.” 30
- (6) In subsection (7), after "Section" insert "323(A1) applies for the interpretation of subsection (5B)(b); and the rest of section".
- 17 In section 323 (meaning of expressions relating to insolvency etc.), before subsection (1) insert –
- “(A1) For the purposes of sections 322(5B) and 323A(1)(b) a company is unable to pay its debts if – 35
- (a) it is unable to pay its debts as they fall due, or
- (b) the value of the company's assets is less than the amount of its liabilities, taking into account its contingent and prospective liabilities.” 40
- 18 After section 323 insert –
- “323A Substantial modification: cases where credits not required to be brought into account**
- (1) Subsection (2) applies if –

- (a) a debtor relationship of a company is modified or replaced by another,
    - (b) immediately before the modification or replacement it is reasonable to assume that, without the modification or replacement and any arrangements of which the modification or replacement forms part, there would be a material risk that at some time within the next 12 months the company would be unable to pay its debts, and 5
    - (c) the modification or replacement is treated for accounting purposes as a substantial modification of the terms of a loan relationship of the company. 10
  - (2) The company is not required to bring into account for the purposes of this Part a credit in respect of any change in the carrying value of the liability representing the modified or replacement debtor relationship. 15
  - (3) If as a result of subsection (2) no credit was brought into account in respect of a change in the carrying value of a liability representing a debtor relationship, the company may not bring into account a debit for the purposes of this Part in respect of a change in the carrying value of that liability, to the extent that the change represents a reversal of the change in carrying value to which subsection (2) applied. 20
  - (4) Section 323(A1) applies for the interpretation of subsection (1)(b).”
- 19 In section 324 (restriction on debts resulting from revaluation), after subsection (3) insert – 25
- “(3A) Where a company has a hedging relationship between a relevant contract (“the hedging instrument”) and the asset or liability representing the loan relationship, this section does not prevent credits or debits being brought into account in respect of changes in the fair value of the asset or liability which are attributable to any of the risks in respect of which the hedging instrument was intended to act as a hedge.” 30
- 20 (1) Section 328 (exchange gains and losses) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1), for “section 307(3)” substitute “section 306A(1)”.
  - (3) Omit subsections (2) and (2A). 35
  - (4) For subsection (3) substitute –
    - “(3) But subsection (1) does not apply to an exchange gain or loss of a company so far as it –
      - (a) arises as a result of the translation of the assets, liabilities, income and expenses of all or part of the company’s business from the functional currency of the business, or that part of the business, into another currency, and 40
      - (b) has been recognised as an item of other comprehensive income.
- (3A) In subsection (3) – 45
- (a) the reference to the functional currency of a business or part of a business is a reference to the currency of the primary

	economic environment in which the business or part operates, and	
	(b) “assets, liabilities, income and expenses” and “item of other comprehensive income” each has the meaning that it has for accounting purposes.	5
(3B)	No amount is to be brought into account for the purposes of this Part in respect of an exchange gain or loss of an investment company (within the meaning of section 17 of CTA 2010) which would not have arisen but for a change in the company’s functional currency (within the meaning of section 17(4) of that Act) as between—	10
	(a) the period of account of the company in which the gain or loss arises, and	
	(b) a period of account of the company ending in the 12 months immediately preceding that period.	
(3C)	But subsection (3B) does not apply to an exchange gain or loss arising at a time when an election under section 9A of CTA 2010 (designated currency of UK resident investment company) has effect in relation to the company.”	15
(5)	For subsection (4) substitute—	
	“(4) The Treasury may by regulations make provision—	20
	(a) excluding exchange gains or losses of a specified description from being brought into account for the purposes of this Part,	
	(b) requiring exchange gains or losses of a specified description which would not otherwise be brought into account for the purposes of this Part to be brought into account in specified circumstances,	25
	(c) as to the way in which, including the currency by reference to which, any exchange gains or losses to be brought into account as a result of provision made under paragraph (b) are to be calculated, and	30
	(d) as to the way in which any such exchange gains or losses are to be brought into account.	
(4ZA)	For the purposes of subsection (4)(b), it does not matter whether the exchange gains or losses would otherwise be excluded from being brought into account as a result of regulations under subsection (4)(a) or otherwise.”	35
(6)	Omit subsections (4A) and (5).	
(7)	For subsection (6) substitute—	
	“(6) The reference in subsection (4) to bringing exchange gains or losses into account is a reference to bringing them into account—	40
	(a) for the purposes of this Part as credits or debits arising to a company from its loan relationships, or	
	(b) for the purposes of corporation tax on chargeable gains.”	
21	Omit sections 328A to 328H (loan relationships: arrangements that have a “one-way exchange effect”) (which are superseded by the amendment made by paragraph 51).	45

- 22 (1) Section 329 (pre-loan relationship and abortive expenses) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1)(c), for “section 307(3)(c)” substitute “section 306A(1)(c)”.
- (3) In subsection (2), for “section 307(3)” substitute “section 307(2)”.
- 23 After section 330 insert—

5

*“Company is not, or has ceased to be, party to loan relationship*

**330A Company is not, or has ceased to be, party to loan relationship**

- (1) This section applies if—
- (a) amounts in respect of a qualifying relationship are recognised in a company’s accounts for an accounting period (“the current period”) as an item of profit or loss even though during all or part of the period the company is not a party to the qualifying relationship, 10
  - (b) any of conditions A to D is met, and
  - (c) in the absence of this section, the credits and debits brought into account by the company for the purposes of this Part or Part 7 for the current period would not include credits or debits representing the whole of those amounts. 15
- (2) In this section “qualifying relationship” means—
- (a) a loan relationship, or 20
  - (b) a relationship that would be a loan relationship if references in section 302(1) to a company were references to any person.
- References in this section to a company being a party to a qualifying relationship are to be read accordingly.
- (3) Condition A is that— 25
- (a) the company was a party to the qualifying relationship,
  - (b) amounts in respect of the qualifying relationship were recognised in the company’s accounts as an item of profit or loss when it was a party to the relationship, and
  - (c) any amounts in respect of the relationship continue to be recognised in those accounts as an item of profit or loss. 30
- (4) Condition B is that the amounts recognised as mentioned in subsection (1)(a) are recognised as a result of a transaction which has the effect of transferring to the company all or part of the risk or reward relating to the qualifying relationship without a corresponding transfer of rights or obligations under the relationship. 35
- (5) Condition C is that the amounts recognised as mentioned in subsection (1)(a) are recognised as a result of a related transaction in relation to a qualifying relationship to which the company was, but has ceased to be, a party. 40
- (6) Condition D is that—
- (a) the amounts recognised as mentioned in subsection (1)(a) are recognised because the company may enter into a qualifying

- relationship or related transaction but has not yet done so,  
and
- (b) the amounts are not expenses to which section 329 applies.
- (7) The company must bring credits and debits into account for the purposes of this Part for the accounting period as if the company were a party to the qualifying relationship for the whole of the accounting period. 5
- (8) The amounts that must be brought into account are those amounts in respect of the qualifying relationship that are recognised in the company's accounts for the accounting period as an item of profit or loss (but subject to the provisions of this Part). 10
- (9) This section is subject to sections 330B and 330C.
- (10) In this section –
- “item of profit or loss” has the meaning it has for accounting purposes; 15
  - “recognised” means recognised in accordance with generally accepted accounting practice;
  - “related transaction”, in relation to a qualifying relationship, is to be read as if the references in section 304(1) and (2) to a loan relationship were to a qualifying relationship. 20

### **330B Exclusion of debit where relief allowed to another**

A company is not to bring into account as a debit for the purposes of this Part as a result of section 330A an amount which –

- (a) is brought into account as a debit for those purposes by another company, 25
- (b) is brought into account so as to reduce the assumed taxable total profits of another company for the purposes of Part 9A of TIOPA 2010 (controlled foreign companies), or
- (c) is allowable as a deduction by a person for the purposes of income tax. 30

### **330C Avoidance of double charge**

- (1) This section applies if at any time a company (“the relevant company”) is required by section 330A to bring into account as a credit for the purposes of this Part an amount –
- (a) which is brought into account as a credit for those purposes by another company, 35
  - (b) which is brought into account in determining the assumed taxable total profits of another company for the purposes of Part 9A of TIOPA 2010 (controlled foreign companies), or
  - (c) on which a person is charged to income tax. 40
- (2) In order to avoid a double charge to tax in respect of the amount, the relevant company may make a claim for one or more consequential adjustments to be made in respect of the amount to be brought into account as a credit.
- (3) On a claim under this section an officer of Revenue and Customs must make such of the consequential adjustments claimed (if any) as are just and reasonable. 45

- (4) Consequential adjustments may be made –
- (a) in respect of any period,
  - (b) by way of an assessment, the modification of an assessment, the amendment of a claim, or otherwise, and
  - (c) despite any time limit imposed by or under any enactment.” 5
- 24 Omit section 331 (company ceasing to be a party to loan relationship) and section 332 (repo, stock lending and other transactions).
- 25 In section 340 (group transfers and transfers of insurance business: transfer at notional carrying value), in subsection (6) –
- (a) omit paragraph (a), and 10
  - (b) in paragraph (c), for “its carrying value in” substitute “its tax-adjusted carrying value based on”.
- 26 (1) Section 342 (issue of new securities on reorganisations: disposal at notional carrying value) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (3), for “its carrying value in” substitute “its tax-adjusted carrying value based on”. 15
  - (3) In subsection (4), omit the definition of “carrying value”.
- 27 Omit section 347 (disapplication of Chapter 4 of Part 5 where transferor party to avoidance) (which is superseded by the amendment made by paragraph 51). 20
- 28 (1) Section 349 (application of amortised cost basis to connected companies relationships) is amended as follows.
- (2) After subsection (2) insert –
    - “(2A) Where –
    - (a) a company has a hedging relationship between a relevant contract (“the hedging instrument”) and the asset or liability representing the loan relationship, and 25
    - (b) the loan relationship is dealt with in the company’s accounts on the basis of fair value accounting,it is to be assumed in applying an amortised cost basis of accounting for the purpose of subsection (2) that the hedging instrument has where possible been designated for accounting purposes as a fair value hedge of the loan relationship.” 30
  - (3) Omit subsections (3) and (4).
- 29 Omit section 350 (companies beginning to be connected) and section 351 (companies ceasing to be connected). 35
- 30 In section 352 (disregard of related transactions), after subsection (3) insert –
- “(3A) Subsections (2) and (3) do not affect the credits or debits to be brought into account for the purposes of this Part in respect of changes in the fair value of the asset that are attributable to changes in the corresponding market rate. 40
  - (3B) Subsection (3A) is subject to section 354 (exclusion of debits for impaired or released connected companies debts).

- (3C) In relation to a debt, “the corresponding market rate” at any time is the lowest rate at which a company of good financial standing might at that time expect to be able to borrow money at arm’s length in the currency applicable to the debt, for repayment at the same time as the debt and otherwise on similar terms.” 5
- 31 After section 352 insert –
- “352A Exclusion of credits on reversal of disregarded loss**
- (1) If as a result of section 352 the debits brought into account by a company in respect of a loan relationship are reduced, no credit is to be brought into account for the purposes of this Part to the extent that it represents the reversal of so much of the loss as was not brought into account as a debit. 10
- (2) Nothing in this section affects the credits to be brought into account for the purposes of this Part in respect of exchange gains or losses resulting from a debt.” 15
- 32 In section 354 (exclusion of debits for impaired or released connected companies debts), after subsection (2) insert –
- “(2A) Where the carrying value of an asset representing the creditor relationship has at any time been adjusted as a result of the asset being the hedged item under a designated fair value hedge, the rule in subsection (1) does not prevent a credit or debit being brought into account for the purposes of this Part in respect of any reversal of that adjustment.” 20
- 33 (1) Section 358 (exclusion of credits on release of connected companies debts: general) is amended as follows. 25
- (2) For subsection (4) substitute –
- “(4) For the purposes of this section “relevant rights” means rights of a company (“C”) that –
- (a) were acquired by C, before the day on which F(No2)A 2015 was passed, in circumstances that, but for the application of the old corporate rescue exception or the old debt-for-debt exception, would have resulted in a deemed release under section 361(3), or 30
- (b) were acquired by another company before that day in such circumstances and transferred to C by way of an assignment or assignments. 35
- (4A) In subsection (4)(a) –
- (a) “the old corporate rescue exception” means the exception in section 361A (as it had effect before F(No2)A 2015);
- (b) “the old debt-for-debt exception” means the exception in section 361B (as it had effect before that Act).” 40
- (3) After subsection (6) insert –
- “(7) Where the carrying value of a liability representing the debtor relationship has at any time been adjusted as a result of the liability being the hedged item under a designated fair value hedge, this section does not prevent a credit or debit being brought into account 45

- for the purposes of this Part in respect of any reversal of that adjustment.
- (8) Nothing in this section affects the credits or debits to be brought into account for the purposes of this Part in respect of exchange gains or losses arising from a debt.” 5
- 34 (1) Section 359 (exclusion of credits on release of connected companies debts during creditor’s insolvency) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1)(d), for “the condition in question” substitute “any of those conditions”.
- (3) After subsection (2) insert – 10
- “(3) Where the carrying value of a liability representing the debtor relationship has at any time been adjusted as a result of the liability being the hedged item under a designated fair value hedge, this section does not prevent a credit being brought into account for the purposes of this Part in respect of any reversal of that adjustment.” 15
- 35 (1) Section 361 (acquisition of creditor rights by connected company at undervalue) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1), for paragraph (f) substitute –
- “(f) the equity-for-debt exception (see section 361C) does not apply.” 20
- (3) Omit subsection (2).
- (4) After subsection (6) insert –
- “(7) Subsections (3) and (4) are subject to section 361D (corporate rescue: debt released shortly after acquisition).”
- 36 Omit section 361A (the corporate rescue exception) and section 361B (the debt-for-debt exception). 25
- 37 After section 361C insert –
- “361D Corporate rescue: debt released shortly after acquisition**
- (1) This section applies if –
- (a) the case is one in which section 361 would otherwise apply, 30
- (b) within 60 days after C becomes a party to the loan relationship as creditor, C or a company connected with C releases D’s liability to pay an amount under the loan relationship, and
- (c) the corporate rescue conditions are met. 35
- (2) If the release is of the whole debt, section 361 does not apply to the acquisition of the rights by C.
- (3) If the release is of part of the debt, the amount that C is treated by section 361 as having released when it acquired the rights under the loan relationship is reduced (but not below nil) by the amount that is actually released as mentioned in subsection (1)(b). 40
- (4) The corporate rescue conditions are –

- 
- (a) that the acquisition by C of its rights under the loan relationship is an arm's length transaction,
- (b) that immediately before C became a party to the loan relationship as creditor, it was reasonable to assume that, without the release and any arrangements of which the release forms part, there would be a material risk that at some time within the next 12 months the company would have been unable to pay its debts. 5
- (5) For the purposes of subsection (4)(b), a company is unable to pay its debts if – 10
- (a) it is unable to pay its debts as they fall due, or
- (b) the value of the company's assets is less than the amount of its liabilities, taking into account its contingent and prospective liabilities.”
- 38 In section 362 (parties becoming connected where creditor's rights subject to impairment adjustment etc), after subsection (5) insert – 15
- “(6) Subsections (2) and (3) are subject to section 362A (corporate rescue: debt released shortly after connection arises).”
- 39 After section 362 insert –
- “362A Corporate rescue: debt released shortly after connection arises** 20
- (1) This section applies if –
- (a) the case is one in which section 362 would otherwise apply,
- (b) within 60 days after C and D become connected, C releases D's liability to pay an amount under the loan relationship, and 25
- (c) the corporate rescue conditions are met.
- (2) If the release is of the whole debt, section 362 does not apply by reason of C and D becoming connected.
- (3) If the release is of part of the debt, the amount that C is treated by section 362 as having released when it became connected with D is reduced (but not below nil) by the amount actually released. 30
- (4) The corporate rescue conditions are –
- (a) that C and D became connected as a result of an arm's length transaction, and
- (b) that immediately before C and D became connected it was reasonable to assume that, without the connection and any arrangements of which the connection forms part, there would be a material risk that at some time within the next 12 months D would have been unable to pay its debts. 35
- (5) For the purposes of subsection (4)(b), a company is unable to pay its debts if – 40
- (a) it is unable to pay its debts as they fall due, or
- (b) the value of the company's assets is less than the amount of its liabilities, taking into account its contingent and prospective liabilities.” 45

- 40 In section 363 (companies connected for sections 361 to 362), in subsections (1) and (4) and in the heading, for “to 362” substitute “to 362A”.
- 41 In section 422 (transfer of loan relationship at notional carrying value), in subsection (3) –
- (a) omit paragraph (a) (including the “and” at the end), and 5
  - (b) in paragraph (b), for “its carrying value in” substitute “its tax-adjusted carrying value based on”.
- 42 (1) Section 424 (reorganisations involving loan relationships) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (3), for “its carrying value in” substitute “its tax-adjusted carrying value based on”. 10
  - (3) In subsection (4), omit the definition of “carrying value”.
- 43 In section 433 (transfer of loan relationship at notional carrying value), in subsection (3) –
- (a) omit paragraph (a) and the “and” immediately following it, and 15
  - (b) in paragraph (b), for “its carrying value in” substitute “its tax-adjusted carrying value based on”.
- 44 (1) Section 435 (reorganisations involving loan relationships) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (3), for “its carrying value in” substitute “its tax-adjusted carrying value based on”. 20
  - (3) In subsection (4), omit the definition of “carrying value”.
- 45 In section 440 (overview of Chapter 15 of Part 5), in subsection (2) –
- (a) in paragraph (a) – 25
    - (i) omit “and tax relief schemes and arrangements”, and
    - (ii) for “to 443” substitute “and 442”,
  - (b) omit paragraph (f) (including the “and” at the end), and
  - (c) at the end of paragraph (g) insert “and
    - (h) for rules dealing with tax avoidance arrangements, see sections 455B to 455D.”. 30
- 46 In section 441 (loan relationships for unallowable purposes), after subsection (3) insert –
- “(3A) If –
- (a) a credit brought into account for that period for the purposes of this Part by the company would (in the absence of this section) be reduced, and 35
  - (b) the reduction represents an amount which, if it did not reduce a credit, would be brought into account as a debit in respect of that relationship,
- subsection (3) applies to the amount of the reduction as if it were an amount that would (in the absence of this section) be brought into account as a debit.” 40
- 47 In section 442 (meaning of “unallowable purpose”), after subsection (1)

- insert –
- “(1A) In subsection (1)(b) “related transaction”, in relation to a loan relationship, includes anything which equates in substance to a disposal or acquisition of the kind mentioned in section 304(1) (as read with section 304(2)).” 5
- 48 Omit section 443 (restriction of relief for interest where tax relief schemes involved) (which is superseded by the amendment made by paragraph 51).
- 49 In section 450 (meaning of “corresponding debtor relationship”), in subsection (6), for “328(2) to (7)” substitute “328(3) to (7)”.
- 50 Omit section 454 (application of fair value accounting: reset bonds etc) and section 455 (loan relationships: disposal for consideration not fully recognised by accounting practice) (which are superseded by the amendment made by paragraph 51). 10
- 51 In Chapter 15 of Part 5, after section 455A insert –
- “Counteracting avoidance arrangements”* 15
- 455B Counteracting effect of avoidance arrangements**
- (1) Any loan-related tax advantages that would (in the absence of this section) arise from relevant avoidance arrangements are to be counteracted by the making of such adjustments as are just and reasonable in relation to credits and debits to be brought into account for the purposes of this Part. 20
- (2) Any adjustments required to be made under this section (whether or not by an officer of Revenue and Customs) may be made by way of an assessment, the modification of an assessment, amendment or disallowance of a claim, or otherwise. 25
- (3) For the meaning of “relevant avoidance arrangements” and “loan-related tax advantage”, see section 455C.
- 455C Interpretation of section 455B**
- (1) This section applies for the interpretation of section 455B (and this section). 30
- (2) “Arrangements” include any agreement, understanding, scheme, transaction or series of transactions (whether or not legally enforceable).
- (3) Arrangements are “relevant avoidance arrangements” if their main purpose, or one of their main purposes, is to enable a company to obtain a loan-related tax advantage. 35
- (4) But arrangements are not “relevant avoidance arrangements” if the obtaining of any loan-related tax advantages that would (in the absence of section 455B) arise from them can reasonably be regarded as consistent with any principles on which the provisions of this Part that are relevant to the arrangements are based (whether expressed or implied) and the policy objectives of those provisions. 40
- (5) A company obtains a “loan-related tax advantage” if –

- (a) it brings into account a debit to which it would not otherwise be entitled,
  - (b) it brings into account a debit which exceeds that to which it would otherwise be entitled,
  - (c) it avoids having to bring a credit into account, 5
  - (d) the amount of any credit brought into account by the company is less than it would otherwise be, or
  - (e) it brings a debit or credit into account earlier or later than it otherwise would.
- (6) In subsection (5), references to bringing a debit or credit into account are references to bringing a debit or credit into account for the purposes of this Part. 10

#### **455D Examples of results that may indicate exclusion not applicable**

- (1) Each of the following is an example of something which might indicate that arrangements whose main purpose, or one of whose main purposes, is to enable a company to obtain a loan-related tax advantage are not excluded by section 455C(4) from being “relevant avoidance arrangements” for the purposes of section 455B— 15
- (a) the elimination or reduction, for purposes of corporation tax, of profits of a company arising from any of its loan relationships, where for economic purposes profits, or greater profits, arise to the company from that relationship; 20
  - (b) the creation or increase, for purposes of corporation tax, of a loss or expense arising from a loan relationship, where for economic purposes no loss or expense, or a smaller loss or expense, arises from that relationship; 25
  - (c) preventing or delaying the recognition as an item of profit or loss of an amount that would apart from the arrangements be recognised in the company’s accounts as an item of profit or loss or be so recognised earlier; 30
  - (d) ensuring that a loan relationship is treated for accounting purposes in a way in which it would not have been treated in the absence of some other transaction forming part of the arrangements;
  - (e) enabling a company to bring into account for the purposes of this Part a debit in respect of an exchange loss, in circumstances where a corresponding exchange gain would not give rise to a credit or would give rise to a credit of a smaller amount; 35
  - (f) enabling a company to bring into account for the purposes of this Part a debit in respect of a fair value loss in circumstances where a corresponding fair value gain would not give rise to a credit or would give rise to a credit of a smaller amount; 40
  - (g) ensuring that the effect of the provisions of Chapter 4 is to produce an overall reduction in the credits brought into account for the purposes this Part or an overall increase in the debits brought into account for those purposes; 45
  - (h) bringing into account for the purposes of this Part an impairment loss or release debit in a case where the provisions of Chapter 6 would but for the arrangements have prevented this. 50

- (2) But in each case the result concerned is only capable of indicating that section 455C(4) is not available if it is reasonable to assume that such a result was not the anticipated result when the provisions of this Part that are relevant to the arrangements were enacted.
- (3) In subsection (1)(f) references to a fair value gain or a fair value loss, in relation to a company, are references respectively to –
- (a) a profit to be brought into account in relation to an asset or liability representing a loan relationship where fair value accounting is used for the period in question, or
  - (b) a loss to be brought into account in relation to such an asset or liability where fair value accounting is used for the period in question.
- (4) “Arrangements” and “loan-related tax advantage” have the same meaning as in section 455C.”
- 52 After section 465A insert –

*“Tax-adjusted carrying value*

**465B “Tax-adjusted carrying value”**

- (1) This section applies for the purposes of this Part.
- (2) “Tax-adjusted carrying value”, in relation to the asset or liability representing a loan relationship, means the carrying value of the asset or liability recognised for accounting purposes, except as provided by subsection (8). 20
- (3) For the purposes of this section the “carrying value” of the asset or liability includes amounts recognised for accounting purposes in relation to the loan relationship in respect of – 25
- (a) accrued amounts,
  - (b) amounts paid or received in advance, or
  - (c) impairment losses (including provisions for bad or doubtful debts).
- (4) For the meaning of “impairment loss” see section 476(1). 30
- (5) In determining the tax-adjusted carrying value of an asset or liability in a period of account of a company, it is to be assumed that the accounting policy applied in drawing up the company’s accounts for the period was also applied in previous periods of account.
- (6) But if the company’s accounts for the period are in accordance with generally accepted accounting practice drawn up on an assumption as to the accounting policy in previous periods of account which differs from that mentioned in subsection (5), that different assumption applies in determining the tax-adjusted carrying value of the asset or liability in the period. 35 40
- (7) In determining the tax-adjusted carrying value of an asset or liability at a time other than the end (or beginning) of a period of account of a company, it is to be assumed that a period of account of the company had ended at the time in question.

- (8) In determining the tax-adjusted carrying value of the asset or liability, the provisions specified in subsection (9) apply as they apply for the purposes of determining the credits and debits to be brought into account under this Part.
- (9) Those provisions are –
- (a) section 308(1A) (amounts recognised in other comprehensive income and transferred to profit and loss),
  - (b) sections 311 and 312 (amounts not fully recognised for accounting purposes),
  - (c) section 320A (amounts recognised in other comprehensive income and not transferred to profit and loss),
  - (d) section 323A (substantial modification: cases where credits not required to be brought into account),
  - (e) section 324 (restriction on debits resulting from revaluation),
  - (f) section 325 (restriction on credits resulting from reversal of disallowed debits),
  - (g) sections 333 and 334 (company ceasing to be UK resident and non-UK company ceasing to hold loan relationship for UK permanent establishment),
  - (h) Chapter 4 (continuity of treatment on transfers within groups or organisations),
  - (i) section 349(2) (application of amortised cost basis of accounting to connected companies relationships),
  - (j) section 352 (disregard of related transactions),
  - (k) section 352A (exclusion of credits on reversal of disregarded loss),
  - (l) section 354 (exclusion of debits for impaired or released connected companies debts),
  - (m) section 360 (exclusion of credits on reversal of impairments of connected companies debts),
  - (n) sections 361 to 363 (deemed debt releases on impaired debts becoming held by connected company),
  - (o) Chapter 8 (connected parties relationships: late interest),
  - (p) section 382 (company partners using fair value accounting),
  - (q) sections 399 to 400C (treatment of index-linked gilt-edged securities),
  - (r) section 404 (restriction on deductions etc relating to FOTRA securities),
  - (s) sections 406 to 412 (deeply discounted securities and close companies),
  - (t) section 415(2) (loan relationships with embedded derivatives),
  - (u) Chapter 13 (European cross-border transfers of business), and
  - (v) Chapter 14 (European cross-border mergers).”
- 53 In section 475 (meaning of expressions relating to exchange gains and losses), in subsection (3), omit “in a case where fair value accounting is used by the company”.

54 After section 475 insert –

*“Meaning of “hedging relationship”*

**475A “Hedging relationship”**

- (1) This section applies for the purposes of this Part.
  - (2) A company has a “hedging relationship” between a relevant contract (“the hedging instrument”) and an asset or liability (“the hedged item”) so far as condition A or B is met. 5
  - (3) Condition A is that the hedging instrument and the hedged item are designated as a hedge by the company.
  - (4) Condition B is that – 10
    - (a) the hedging instrument is intended to act as a hedge of the exposure to changes in fair value of the hedged item which is attributable to a particular risk and could affect the profit or loss of the company, and
    - (b) the hedged item is an asset or liability recognised for accounting purposes or is an identified portion of such an asset or liability. 15
  - (5) For the purposes of subsections (2) and (4), the liabilities of a company include its own share capital.”
- 55 In section 476 (other definitions), in subsection (1) – 20
- (a) before the definition of “alternative finance arrangements” insert –
 

““accounting policy”, in relation to a company, means the principles, bases, conventions, rules and practices that the company applies in preparing and presenting its financial statements,”,

25
  - (b) after the definition of “equity instrument” insert –
 

““fair value” has the meaning it has for accounting purposes,”,
  - (c) after the definition of “release debit” insert –
 

““relevant contract” has the same meaning as in Part 7 (see section 577),”,

30
  - (d) in the definition of “tax advantage”, for “has” substitute “, except in the expression “loan-related tax advantage”, has”.
- 56 Part 6 of CTA 2009 (relationships treated as loan relationships etc) is amended as follows. 35
- 57 In section 521F (shares becoming or ceasing to be shares to which section 521B applies) –
- (a) in subsection (3), for “its carrying value in” substitute “its tax-adjusted carrying value based on”, and
  - (b) omit subsection (4). 40
- 58 In section 540 (manufactured interest treated as interest under loan relationship), in subsection (3), omit “, including, in particular, section 307(3)”.

PART 2

DERIVATIVE CONTRACTS: AMENDMENTS OF PART 7 OF CTA 2009

- 59 Part 7 of CTA 2009 (derivative contracts) is amended as follows.
- 60 In section 594 (overview of Chapter 3 of Part 7), in subsection (2) –
- (a) before paragraph (a) insert – 5
    - “(za) makes provision about the matters in respect of which amounts are to be brought into account (see section 594A),”, and
  - (b) for paragraph (g) substitute – 10
    - “(g) makes provision about cases where amounts are recognised even though companies are not, or have ceased to be, parties to derivative contracts (see section 607A),
    - (ga) makes provision about companies moving abroad (see sections 609 and 610), and”. 15
- 61 After section 594 insert –

*“Matters in respect of which amounts are to be brought into account*

**594A Matters in respect of which amounts are to be brought into account**

- (1) The matters in respect of which amounts are to be brought into account for the purposes of this Part in respect of a company’s derivative contracts are – 20
    - (a) profits and losses of the company which arise to it from its derivative contracts and related transactions (excluding expenses), and
    - (b) expenses incurred by the company under or for the purposes of those contracts and transactions. 25
  - (2) Expenses are only treated as incurred as mentioned in subsection (1)(b) if they are incurred directly –
    - (a) in bringing any of the derivative contracts into existence,
    - (b) in entering into or giving effect to any of the related transactions, 30
    - (c) in making payments under any of those contracts or as a result of any of those transactions, or
    - (d) in taking steps to secure the receipt of payments under any of those contracts or in accordance with any of those transactions. 35
  - (3) For the treatment of pre-contract or abortive expenses, see section 607.
  - (4) In subsection (1) “profits and losses” include profits and losses of a capital nature. 40
  - (5) For the meaning of “related transaction”, see section 596.”
- 62 (1) Section 595 (general principles about the bringing into account of credits and debits) is amended as follows.

- (2) In subsection (2) –
- (a) after “this Part” insert “in respect of the matters mentioned in section 594A(1)”, and
  - (b) omit “(but this is subject to subsections (3) and (4))”.
- (3) After subsection (2) insert – 5
- “(2A) Subsections (2B) and (2C) apply if an accounting period of a company does not coincide with one or more of its periods of account.
- (2B) The amounts referred to in subsection (2) are to be determined by apportionment in accordance with section 1172 of CTA 2010 (time basis). 10
- (2C) But if it appears that apportionment in accordance with that section would work unreasonably or unjustly for an accounting period, subsection (2) is to be read as referring to amounts that would have been recognised in determining the company’s profit or loss for that period in accordance with generally accepted accounting practice if accounts had been drawn up for that period.” 15
- (4) Omit subsections (3) to (6) and (8).
- 63 (1) Section 597 (amounts recognised in determining a company’s profit or loss) is amended as follows. 20
- (2) In subsection (1), for the words from “recognised”, in the second place, onwards substitute “that is recognised in the company’s accounts for the period as an item of profit or loss”.
  - (3) After subsection (1) insert –
- “(1A) The reference in subsection (1) to an amount recognised in the company’s accounts for the period as an item of profit or loss includes a reference to an amount that – 25
- (a) was previously recognised as an item of other comprehensive income, and
  - (b) is transferred to become an item of profit or loss in determining the company’s profit or loss for the period. 30
- (1B) In subsections (1) and (1A) “item of profit or loss” and “item of other comprehensive income” each has the meaning that it has for accounting purposes.”
- (4) Omit subsections (2) and (3). 35
- 64 In section 599B (determination of credits and debits where amounts not fully recognised), in subsection (4)(b), for “carrying value” substitute “tax-adjusted carrying value”.
- 65 (1) Section 604 (credits and debits treated as relating to capital expenditure) is amended as follows. 40
- (2) For subsections (1) to (3) substitute –
- “(1) This section applies if –

- (a) an amount for an accounting period in respect of a company's derivative contract relates to any of the matters in section 594A(1),
  - (b) generally accepted accounting practice allows the amount to be treated in the company's accounts as an amount recognised in determining the carrying value of an asset or liability, and 5
  - (c) any profit or loss for corporation tax purposes in relation to that asset or liability will not fall to be calculated in accordance with generally accepted accounting practice. 10
- (2) Despite that treatment, the amount must be brought into account as a credit or debit in accordance with this Part, for the accounting period in which it is recognised, in the same way as an amount which is brought into account as a credit or debit in determining the company's profit or loss for that period in accordance with generally accepted accounting practice. 15
- (3) But subsection (2) does not apply to an amount which relates to an intangible fixed asset to which an election under section 730 (writing down at fixed rate: election for fixed-rate basis) applies." 10
- (3) Omit subsection (4). 20
- (4) For subsection (5) substitute –
  - “(5) If an amount is brought into account as mentioned in subsection (2) as a debit, no debit may be brought into account in accordance with this Part in respect of –
    - (a) the writing down of so much of the value of the asset or liability as is attributable to that debit, or 25
    - (b) so much of any amortisation or depreciation representing a writing off of that value as is attributable to that debit.”
- 66 After section 604 insert –
  - “**604A Amounts recognised in other comprehensive income and not transferred to profit or loss** 30
  - (1) This section applies if –
    - (a) in a period of account a derivative contract of a company ceases in accordance with generally accepted accounting practice to be recognised in the company's accounts, 35
    - (b) amounts relating to the matters mentioned in section 594A(1) in respect of that derivative contract have in accordance with generally accepted accounting practice been recognised in the company's accounts as items of other comprehensive income and have not subsequently been transferred to become items of profit or loss, and 40
    - (c) condition A or B is met.
  - (2) Condition A is that, at the time when the derivative contract ceases to be recognised, it is not expected that the amounts mentioned in subsection (1)(b) will in future be transferred to become items of profit or loss. 45

- (3) Condition B is that, at any later time, it is no longer expected that the amounts mentioned in subsection (1)(b) will in future be transferred to become items of profit or loss.
- (4) The amounts mentioned in subsection (1)(b) –
- (a) must be brought into account for the purposes of this Part as credits or debits for the period of account in which the time mentioned in subsection (2) or (3) falls, in the same way as a credit or debit which is brought into account in determining the company’s profit or loss for that period in accordance with generally accepted accounting practice, and 5
  - (b) must not be brought into account for a later period of account even if they are subsequently transferred to become items of profit or loss for the later period. 10
- (5) This section applies in a case where part of a derivative contract of a company ceases to be recognised in the company’s accounts as it applies in a case where the whole of a derivative contract ceases to be recognised, but as if the reference in subsection (1)(b) to amounts in respect of a derivative contract were a reference to so much of those amounts as are attributable to that part of the derivative contract. 15
- (6) In determining what amounts fall within subsection (1)(b) at any time in an accounting period, it is to be assumed that the accounting policy applied in drawing up the company’s accounts for the period was also applied in previous accounting periods. 20
- (7) But if the company’s accounts for the period are in accordance with generally accepted accounting practice drawn up on an assumption as to the accounting policy in previous accounting periods which differs from that mentioned in subsection (6), that different assumption applies in determining what amounts fall within subsection (1)(b) at the time in question. 25
- (8) In this section “item of profit or loss” and “item of other comprehensive income” each has the meaning that it has for accounting purposes.” 30
- 67 Omit section 605 (credits and debits recognised in equity).
- 68 (1) Section 606 (exchange gains and losses) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1), for “section 595(3)” substitute “section 594A(1)”. 35
  - (3) Omit subsections (2) and (2A).
  - (4) For subsection (3) substitute –
- “(3) But subsection (1) does not apply to an exchange gain or loss of a company so far as it –
- (a) arises as a result of the translation of the assets, liabilities, income and expenses of all or part of the company’s business from the functional currency of the business, or that part of the business, into another currency, and 40
  - (b) has been recognised as an item of other comprehensive income. 45
- (3A) In subsection (3) –

- (a) the reference to the functional currency of a business or part of a business is a reference to the currency of the primary economic environment in which the business or part operates, and
  - (b) “assets, liabilities, income and expenses” and “item of other comprehensive income” each has the meaning that it has for accounting purposes. 5
- (3B) No amount is to be brought into account for the purposes of this Part in respect of an exchange gain or loss of an investment company (within the meaning of section 17 of CTA 2010) which would not have arisen but for a change in the company’s functional currency (within the meaning of section 17(4) of that Act) as between— 10
  - (a) the period of account of the company in which the gain or loss arises, and
  - (b) a period of account of the company ending in the 12 months immediately preceding that period. 15
- (3C) But subsection (3B) does not apply to an exchange gain or loss arising at a time when an election under section 9A of CTA 2010 (designated currency of UK resident investment company) has effect in relation to the company.” 20
- (5) For subsection (4) substitute—
  - “(4) The Treasury may by regulations make provision—
    - (a) excluding exchange gains or losses of a specified description from being brought into account for the purposes of this Part,
    - (b) requiring exchange gains or losses of a specified description which would not otherwise be brought into account for the purposes of this Part to be brought into account in specified circumstances, 25
    - (c) as to the way in which, including the currency by reference to which, any exchange gains or losses to be brought into account as a result of provision made under paragraph (b) are to be calculated, and 30
    - (d) as to the way in which any such exchange gains or losses are to be brought into account.
- (4ZA) For the purposes of subsection (4)(b), it does not matter whether the exchange gains or losses would otherwise be excluded from being brought into account by regulations under subsection (4)(a) or otherwise.” 35
- (6) Omit subsections (4A) to (5).
- (7) In subsection (6)— 40
  - (a) for “The reference in subsection (5)” substitute “References in subsection (4)”, and
  - (b) for “is a reference” substitute “are references”.
- 69 Omit sections 606A to 606H (derivative contracts: arrangements that have “one-way exchange effect”) (which are superseded by the amendments made by paragraph 94). 45
- 70 (1) Section 607 (pre-contract or abortive expenses) is amended as follows.

(2) In subsection (1)(c), for “section 595(3)(b)” substitute “section 594A(1)(b)”.

(3) In subsection (2), for “section 595(3)” substitute “section 595(2)”.

71 After section 607 insert—

**“607A Company is not, or has ceased to be, party to derivative contract**

- |  |    |
|--|----|
| (1) This section applies if—   | 5  |
| (a) amounts in respect of a qualifying contract are recognised in a company’s accounts for an accounting period (“the current period”) as an item of profit or loss even though during all or part of the period the company is not a party to the qualifying contract,  | 10 |
| (b) any of conditions A to D is met, and   |    |
| (c) in the absence of this section, the credits and debits brought into account by the company for the purposes of this Part for the current period would not include credits or debits representing the whole of those amounts.   | 15 |
| (2) In this section “qualifying contract” means—   |    |
| (a) a derivative contract, or  |    |
| (b) a contract that would be a derivative contract if references in section 576(1) to a company were references to any person.   |    |
| (3) Condition A is that—   | 20 |
| (a) the company was a party to the qualifying contract,  |    |
| (b) amounts in respect of the qualifying contract were recognised in the company’s accounts as an item of profit or loss when it was a party to the contract, and  |    |
| (c) any amounts in respect of the contract continue to be recognised in those accounts as an item of profit or loss.   | 25 |
| (4) Condition B is that the amounts recognised as mentioned in subsection (1)(a) are recognised as a result of a transaction which has the effect of transferring to the company all or part of the risk or reward relating to the qualifying contract without a corresponding transfer of rights or obligations under the contract. | 30 |
| (5) Condition C is that the amounts recognised as mentioned in subsection (1)(a) are recognised as a result of a related transaction in relation to a qualifying contract to which the company was, but has ceased to be, a party.   | 35 |
| (6) Condition D is that—   |    |
| (a) the amounts recognised as mentioned in subsection (1)(a) are recognised because the company may enter into a qualifying contract or related transaction but has not yet done so, and   |    |
| (b) the amounts are not expenses to which section 607 applies.   | 40 |
| (7) The company must bring credits and debits into account for the purposes of this Part for the accounting period as if the company were a party to the qualifying contract for the whole of the accounting period.   |    |
| (8) The amounts that must be brought into account are those amounts in respect of the qualifying contract that are recognised in the   | 45 |

company's accounts for the accounting period as an item of profit or loss (but subject to the provisions of this Part).

(9) This section is subject to sections 607B and 607C.

(10) In this section –

“item of profit or loss” has the meaning it has for accounting purposes; 5

“recognised” means recognised in accordance with generally accepted accounting practice;

“related transaction”, in relation to a qualifying contract, is to be read as if the references in section 596(1) and (2) to a derivative contract were to a qualifying contract. 10

### 607B Exclusion of debit where relief allowed to another

A company is not to bring into account as a debit for the purposes of this Part as a result of section 607A any amount which –

(a) is brought into account as a debit for those purposes by another company, 15

(b) is brought into account so as to reduce the assumed taxable total profits of another company for the purposes of Part 9A of TIOPA 2010 (controlled foreign companies), or

(c) is allowable as a deduction by a person for the purposes of income tax. 20

### 607C Avoidance of double charge

(1) This section applies if at any time a company (“the relevant company”) is required by section 607A to bring into account as a credit for the purposes of this Part an amount – 25

(a) which is brought into account as a credit for those purposes by another company,

(b) which is brought into account in determining the assumed taxable total profits of another company for the purposes of Part 9A of TIOPA 2010 (controlled foreign companies), or 30

(c) on which a person is charged to income tax.

(2) In order to avoid a double charge to tax in respect of the amount, the relevant company may make a claim for one or more consequential adjustments to be made in respect of the amount brought into account as a credit. 35

(3) On a claim under this section an officer of Revenue and Customs must make such of the consequential adjustments claimed (if any) as are just and reasonable.

(4) Consequential adjustments may be made –

(a) in respect of any period, 40

(b) by way of an assessment, the modification of an assessment, the amendment of a claim, or otherwise, and

(c) despite any time limit imposed by or under any enactment.”

72 Omit section 608 (company ceasing to be party to derivative contract).

73 In section 612 (overview of Chapter 4 of Part 7), in subsection (2)(a), for “policy” substitute “basis”. 45

- 74 In the italic heading before section 613, for “policy” substitute “basis”.
- 75 (1) Section 613 (introduction to sections 614 and 615) is amended as follows.
- (2) For subsection (1) substitute –
- “(1) Sections 614 and 615 (adjustments on change of accounting basis) apply if – 5
- (a) a company changes, from one period of account or accounting period to the next, the basis of accounting on which credits and debits relating to its derivative contracts or any of them are calculated for the purposes of this Part,
- (b) the change of basis – 10
- (i) is made in order to comply with a provision made by or under this Part requiring those credits and debits to be determined on a particular basis of accounting, or
- (ii) results from a change of the company’s accounting policy, 15
- (c) the change of basis is not made in order to comply with amending legislation not applicable to the previous period,
- (d) the old basis accorded with the law or practice applicable in relation to the period before the change, and
- (e) the new basis accords with the law and practice applicable to the period after the change.” 20
- (3) In subsection (2), for “those periods of account” substitute “the periods mentioned in subsection (1)”.
- (4) Omit subsection (3).
- 76 For section 614 substitute – 25
- “614 Change of basis of accounting involving change of value**
- (1) If there is a difference between –
- (a) the tax-adjusted carrying value of a derivative contract at the end of the earlier period, and
- (b) the tax-adjusted carrying value of that derivative contract at the beginning of the later period, 30
- a credit or debit (as the case may be) of an amount equal to the difference must be brought into account for the purposes of this Part for the later period in the same way as a credit or debit which is brought into account in determining the company’s profit or loss for that period in accordance with generally accepted accounting practice. 35
- (2) This section does not apply so far as the credit or debit falls to be brought into account apart from this section.”
- 77 (1) Section 615 (change of accounting policy after ceasing to be party to derivative contract) is amended as follows. 40
- (2) In subsection (1), for paragraph (b) substitute –
- “(b) section 607A (company is not, or has ceased to be, party to derivative contract) applied to the cessation, and”.

- (3) For subsections (2) and (3) substitute –
- “(2) A credit or debit (as the case may be) of an amount equal to the difference must be brought into account for the purposes of this Part for the later period in the same way as a credit or debit which is brought into account in determining the company’s profit or loss for that period in accordance with generally accepted accounting practice.” 5
- (4) In subsection (4), for “Subsections (2) and (3) do” substitute “Subsection (2) does”.
- (5) For subsection (5) substitute – 10
- “(5) In this section “the amount outstanding in respect of the derivative contract” means –
- (a) so much of the recognised deferred income or recognised deferred loss from the derivative contract as has not been represented by credits or debits brought into account in accordance with this Part in respect of the contract, and 15
- (b) any amounts relating to the matters mentioned in section 594A(1) in respect of the derivative contract that have in accordance with generally accepted accounting practice been recognised in the company’s accounts as items of other comprehensive income and not transferred to become items of profit or loss.” 20
- (6) After subsection (6) insert –
- “(7) In determining what amounts fall within subsection (5)(b) at the beginning or end of a period, it is to be assumed that the accounting policy applied in drawing up the company’s accounts for the period was also applied in previous periods. 25
- (8) But if the company’s accounts for the period are in accordance with generally accepted accounting practice drawn up on an assumption as to the accounting policy in previous periods which differs from that mentioned in subsection (7), that different assumption applies in determining what amounts fall within subsection (5)(b) at the beginning or end of the period.” 30
- 78 In section 622 (contracts ceasing to be derivative contracts), in subsection (4), for “the carrying value of the contract in” substitute “the tax-adjusted carrying value of the contract based on”. 35
- 79 In section 625 (group member replacing another as party to derivative contract), in subsection (6)(b), for “its carrying value in” substitute “its tax-adjusted carrying value based on”.
- 80 Omit section 629 (disapplication of section 625 where transferor party to avoidance) (which is superseded by the amendment made by paragraph 94). 40
- 81 In section 653 (shares issued or deferred as a result of exercise of deemed option), in subsection (2), for “carrying value” substitute “tax-adjusted carrying value”.
- 82 In section 654 (payment instead of disposal on exercise of deemed option), in subsection (3), in the definition of “CV”, in paragraphs (a) and (b), for “carrying value” substitute “tax-adjusted carrying value”. 45

- |    |   |    |
|----|---|----|
| 83 | In section 658 (chargeable gain or allowable loss treated as accruing), in subsection (5)(b), for “carrying value” substitute “tax-adjusted carrying value”.  |    |
| 84 | In section 666 (allowable loss treated as accruing), in subsection (2), in the definition of “B”, for “carrying value” substitute “tax-adjusted carrying value”.  | 5  |
| 85 | In section 671 (meaning of G, L and CV in section 670), in subsection (4), for “carrying value”, in each place, substitute “tax-adjusted carrying value”.   |    |
| 86 | In section 673 (meaning of G, L and CV in section 672), in subsection (4), for “carrying value”, in each place, substitute “tax-adjusted carrying value”.   | 10 |
| 87 | In section 675 (transfer of derivative contract at notional carrying value), in subsection (3), for “its carrying value in” substitute “its tax-adjusted carrying value based on”.  |    |
| 88 | In section 684 (transfer of derivative contract at notional carrying value), in subsection (3), for “its carrying value in” substitute “its tax-adjusted carrying value based on”.  | 15 |
| 89 | In section 689 (overview of Chapter 11 of Part 7), in subsection (2) –<br>(a) omit paragraph (d) (including the “and” at the end), and<br>(b) at the end of paragraph (e) insert “and<br>(f) for rules dealing with tax avoidance arrangements, see sections 698B to 698D.”   | 20 |
| 90 | (1) Section 690 (derivative contracts for unallowable purposes) is amended as follows.<br><br>(2) After subsection (3) insert –<br><br>“(3A) If –   | 25 |
|    | (a) a credit brought into account for that period for the purposes of this Part by the company would (in the absence of this section) be reduced, and<br>(b) the reduction represents an amount which, if it did not reduce a credit, would be brought into account as a debit in respect of that contract,<br>subsection (3) applies to the amount of the reduction as if it were an amount that would (in the absence of this section) be brought into account as a debit.” | 30 |
|    | (3) In subsection (6), omit the words from “which are” onwards.   | 35 |
| 91 | In section 691 (meaning of “unallowable purpose”), after subsection (1) insert –<br><br>“(1A) In subsection (1)(b) “related transaction”, in relation to a derivative contract, includes anything which equates in substance to a disposal or acquisition of the kind mentioned in section 596(1) (as read with section 596(2)).”   | 40 |
| 92 | In section 692 (allowance of accumulated net losses), in Step 3 in subsection (5) –<br>(a) for “the amount” substitute “so much”, and   |    |

- (b) at the end insert “as are referable to the unallowable purpose mentioned in subsection (1)(a) on a just and reasonable apportionment”.
- 93 Omit section 698 (derivative contracts: disposals for consideration not fully recognised by accounting practice) (which is superseded by the amendment made by paragraph 94). 5
- 94 In Chapter 11 of Part 7 of CTA 2009, after section 698A insert –

*“Counteracting avoidance arrangements*

**698B Counteracting effect of avoidance arrangements**

- (1) Any derivative-related tax advantages that would (in the absence of this section) arise from relevant avoidance arrangements are to be counteracted by the making of such adjustments as are just and reasonable in relation to credits and debits to be brought into account for the purposes of this Part. 10
- (2) Any adjustments required to be made under this section (whether or not by an officer of Revenue and Customs) may be made by way of an assessment, the modification of an assessment, amendment or disallowance of a claim, or otherwise. 15
- (3) For the meaning of “relevant avoidance arrangements” and “derivative-related tax advantage”, see section 698C. 20

**698C Interpretation of section 698B**

- (1) This section applies for the interpretation of section 698B (and this section).
- (2) “Arrangements” include any agreement, understanding, scheme, transaction or series of transactions (whether or not legally enforceable). 25
- (3) Arrangements are “relevant avoidance arrangements” if their main purpose, or one of their main purposes, is to enable a company to obtain a derivative-related tax advantage.
- (4) But arrangements are not “relevant avoidance arrangements” if the obtaining of any derivative-related tax advantages that would (in the absence of section 698B) arise from them can reasonably be regarded as consistent with any principles on which the provisions of this Part that are relevant to the arrangements are based (whether expressed or implied) and the policy objectives of those provisions. 35
- (5) A company obtains a “derivative-related tax advantage” if –
- (a) it brings into account a debit to which it would not otherwise be entitled,
  - (b) it brings into account a debit which exceeds that to which it would otherwise be entitled, 40
  - (c) it avoids having to bring a credit into account,
  - (d) the amount of any credit brought into account by the company is less than it would otherwise be, or
  - (e) it brings a debit or credit into account earlier or later than it otherwise would. 45

- (6) In subsection (5), references to bringing a debit or credit into account are references to bringing a debit or credit into account for the purposes of this Part.

**698D Examples of results that may indicate exclusion not applicable**

- (1) Each of the following is an example of something which might indicate that arrangements whose main purpose, or one of whose main purposes, is to enable a company to obtain a derivative-related tax advantage are not excluded by section 698C(4) from being “relevant avoidance arrangements” for the purposes of section 698B—
- (a) the elimination or reduction, for purposes of corporation tax, of profits of a company arising from any of its derivative contracts, where for economic purposes profits, or greater profits, arise to the company from that contract;
  - (b) the creation or increase, for purposes of corporation tax, of a loss or expense arising from a derivative contract, where for economic purposes no loss or expense, or a smaller loss or expense, arises from that contract;
  - (c) preventing or delaying the recognition as an item of profit or loss of an amount that would apart from the arrangements be recognised in the company’s accounts as an item of profit or loss or be so recognised earlier;
  - (d) ensuring that a derivative contract is treated for accounting purposes in a way in which it would not have been treated in the absence of some other transaction forming part of the arrangements;
  - (e) enabling a company to bring into account a debit in respect of an exchange loss, in circumstances where a corresponding exchange gain would not give rise to a credit or would give rise to a credit of a smaller amount;
  - (f) enabling a company to bring into account a debit in respect of a fair value loss in circumstances where a corresponding fair value gain would not give rise to a credit or would give rise to a credit of a smaller amount.
- (2) But in each case the result concerned is only capable of indicating that section 698C(4) is not available if it is reasonable to assume that such a result was not the anticipated result when the provisions of this Part that are relevant to the arrangements were enacted
- (3) In subsection (1)(f) references to a fair value gain or a fair value loss are references respectively to—
- (a) a profit to be brought into account in relation to a derivative contract where fair value accounting is used for the period in question, or
  - (b) a loss to be brought into account in relation to a derivative contract where fair value accounting is used for the period in question.
- (4) “Arrangements” and “derivative-related tax advantage” have the same meaning as in section 698C.”

95 For section 702 substitute –

**“702 “Tax-adjusted carrying value”**

- (1) This section applies for the purposes of this Part.
- (2) “Tax-adjusted carrying value”, in relation to a contract, means the carrying value of the contract recognised for accounting purposes, except as provided by subsection (7). 5
- (3) For the purposes of this section the “carrying value” of the contract includes amounts recognised for accounting purposes in relation to the contract in respect of –
  - (a) accrued amounts, 10
  - (b) amounts paid or received in advance, or
  - (c) impairment losses (including provisions for bad or doubtful debts).
- (4) In determining the tax-adjusted carrying value of a contract in a period of account of a company, it is to be assumed that the accounting policy applied in drawing up the company’s accounts for the period was also applied in previous periods of account. 15
- (5) But if the company’s accounts for the period are in accordance with generally accepted accounting practice drawn up on an assumption as to the accounting policy in previous periods of account which differs from that mentioned in subsection (4), that different assumption applies in determining the tax-adjusted carrying value of the contract in the period. 20
- (6) In determining the tax-adjusted carrying value of a contract at a time other than the end (or beginning) of a period of account of a company, it is to be assumed that a period of account of the company had ended at the time in question. 25
- (7) In determining the profits and losses to be recognised in determining the tax-adjusted carrying value of the contract, the provisions specified in subsection (8) apply as they apply for the purposes of determining the credits and debits to be brought into account in accordance with this Part. 30
- (8) Those provisions are –
  - (a) section 584 (hybrid derivatives with embedded derivatives),
  - (b) section 585 (loan relationships with embedded derivatives), 35
  - (c) section 586 (other contracts with embedded derivatives),
  - (d) section 597 (amounts recognised in determining profit or loss),
  - (e) sections 599A and 599B (amounts not fully recognised for accounting purposes), 40
  - (f) section 604A (amounts recognised in other comprehensive income and not transferred to profit and loss),
  - (g) Chapter 5 (transactions within groups),
  - (h) Chapter 9 (European cross-border transfers of business), and
  - (i) Chapter 10 (European cross-border mergers). 45

- (9) In this section “impairment loss” means a debit in respect of the impairment of a financial asset and “impairment” includes uncollectability.”
- 96 In section 705 (expressions relating to exchange gains and losses), in subsection (3), omit “in a case where fair value accounting is used by the company”. 5
- 97 In section 710 (other definitions) –
- (a) before the definition of “bank” insert –
- ““accounting policy”, in relation to a company, means the principles, bases, conventions, rules and practices that the company applies in preparing and presenting its financial statements,”
- 10
- (b) for the definition of “fair value accounting” substitute –
- ““fair value accounting” means a basis of accounting under which –
- 15
- (a) assets and liabilities are measured in the company’s balance sheet at their fair value, and
- (b) changes in the fair value of assets and liabilities are recognised as items of profit or loss,” and
- 20
- (c) omit the definition of “statement of comprehensive income”.

### PART 3

#### AMENDMENTS OF TCGA 1992 RELATING TO LOAN RELATIONSHIPS

- 98 (1) Section 151E of TCGA 1992 (exchange gains and losses from loan relationships: regulations) is amended as follows. 25
- (2) In subsection (1) –
- (a) for “amounts” substitute “exchange gains or losses (as defined by section 475 of CTA 2009)”, and
- (b) for “or (4) of that Act” substitute “of that Act or because of regulations under section 328(4) of that Act”. 30
- (3) After that subsection insert –
- “(1A) The regulations may make provision as to the way in which, including the currency by reference to which, the amounts to be brought into account are to be calculated.” 35

### PART 4

#### CONSEQUENTIAL AMENDMENTS

- 99 (1) Schedule 4 to CTA 2009 (index of defined expressions) is amended as follows.
- (2) At the appropriate place in each case insert – 40
- “accounting policy (in Parts 5 and 6) | section 476”;

“accounting policy (in Part 7)	section 710”;	
“designated fair value hedge (in Parts 5 and 6)	section 313(7)”;	
“hedged item (in Parts 5 and 6)	section 313(7)”;	
“hedging relationship (in Parts 5 and 6)	section 475A”;	5
“relevant contract (in Parts 5 and 6)	section 476(1)”;	
“tax-adjusted carrying value (in Parts 5 and 6)	section 465B”;	
“tax-adjusted carrying value (in Part 7)	section 702”.	
(3) In the entry for “fair value (in Parts 5 and 6)”, for “313(6)” substitute “476(1)”.		10
(4) Omit the following –		
(a) the entry for “carrying value (in Part 7)”;		
(b) the entries for “statement of comprehensive income (in Parts 5 and 6)” and “statement of comprehensive income (in Part 7)”;		
(c) the entries for “the Part 5 one-way exchange effect provisions” and “the Part 7 one-way exchange effect provisions”.		15
100 In Schedule 21 to FA 2009, omit paragraphs 1 to 3, 7 and 9.		

PART 5

REPEAL OF UNCOMMENCED REPEAL PROVISIONS

101 (1) Part 21 of CTA 2009 (other general provisions) is amended as follows.		20
(2) In Schedule 2 (transitionals and savings), omit paragraphs 71 and 99 (which contain prospective repeals relating to loan relationships or derivative contracts and have never been brought into force).		
(3) In section 1325 (transitional provision and savings), in subsection (2), omit the words from “except paragraphs 71 and 99” onwards.		25
(4) In section 1329 (commencement), omit subsections (3) and (4).		
(5) In Schedule 3 (repeals and revocations), omit Part 2 (prospective repeals).		

PART 6

COMMENCEMENT AND TRANSITIONAL PROVISIONS

<i>Introductory</i>		30
102 This Part of this Schedule contains provision about the coming into force of the amendments in Parts 1 to 5 of this Schedule.		

*Commencement: the general rule*

- |     |   |    |
|-----|---|----|
| 103 | The general rule is that the amendments made by Parts 1 to 4 of this Schedule have effect in relation to accounting periods beginning on or after 1 January 2016. |    |
| 104 | This general rule –   | 5  |
|     | (a) does not apply in relation to the provisions dealt with by paragraphs 106 to 113, and   |    |
|     | (b) has effect subject to the transitional provisions in paragraphs 114 to 128.   |    |
| 105 | Part 5 of this Schedule comes into force on the day on which this Act is passed.  | 10 |

*Commencement: sections 321, 349 and 605 of CTA 2009*

- |     |  |    |
|-----|--|----|
| 106 | (1) Paragraphs 15 and 28 have effect in relation to loan relationships entered into by a company in an accounting period beginning on or after 1 January 2016.   | 15 |
|     | (2) Paragraph 67 has effect in relation to derivative contracts entered into by a company in an accounting period beginning on or after 1 January 2016.  |    |
|     | (3) In relation to loan relationships entered into by a company in an accounting period beginning before 1 January 2016, sub-paragraphs (4) to (6) apply in relation to accounting periods beginning on or after that date.  | 20 |
|     | (4) The reference in section 321(1)(b) of CTA 2009 to recognition in any of the statements mentioned in section 308(1) of that Act is to be read in relation to the company as a reference to recognition in the company's accounts for the period as an item of profit or loss or as an item of other comprehensive income.                         | 25 |
|     | (5) But section 321 does not bring into account for the purposes of Part 5 of CTA 2009 any exchange gain or loss of the company so far as it is recognised in the company's statement of total recognised gains and losses, statement of recognised income and expense, statement of changes in equity or statement of income and retained earnings. | 30 |
|     | (6) The reference in section 349 of CTA 2009 to an amortised cost basis of accounting is to be read in relation to the company without regard to the amendment of section 313(4) of that Act made by paragraph 7(5).   |    |
|     | (7) In relation to derivative contracts entered into by a company in an accounting period beginning before 1 January 2016, sub-paragraphs (8) and (9) apply in relation to accounting periods beginning on or after that date.   | 35 |
|     | (8) The reference in section 605(1)(b) of CTA 2009 to recognition in any of the statements mentioned in section 597(1) of that Act is to be read in relation to the company as a reference to recognition in the company's accounts for the period as an item of profit or loss or as an item of other comprehensive income.                         | 40 |
|     | (9) But section 605 does not bring into account for the purposes of Part 7 of CTA 2009 any exchange gain or loss of the company so far as it is recognised in the company's statement of total recognised gains and losses, statement of   |    |

recognised income and expense, statement of changes in equity or statement of income and retained earnings.

- (10) In this paragraph “item of profit and loss” and “item of other comprehensive income” each has the meaning that it has for accounting purposes.

*Commencement: insolvency, corporate rescue etc* 5

107 Paragraphs 16 to 18 and 33(2) have effect in relation to the release, modification or replacement of a debtor relationship of a company on or after the day on which this Act is passed.

108 Paragraphs 35 to 37 have effect where the company acquiring the rights under the loan relationship as creditor does so on or after the day on which this Act is passed. 10

109 Paragraphs 38 to 40 have effect where the companies become connected with each other on or after the day on which this Act is passed.

*Commencement: anti-avoidance provisions etc*

110 The following provisions have effect in relation to arrangements entered into on or after the day on which this Act is passed – 15

paragraph 20, so far as relating to the repeal of section 328(4A) of CTA 2009,

paragraph 21, 20

paragraph 27, 20

paragraph 45(a) and (c),

paragraph 51,

paragraph 55(d),

paragraph 68, so far as relating to the repeal of section 606(4C) to (4E) of CTA 2009, 25

paragraph 69,

paragraph 80,

paragraph 89(b),

paragraph 94, and 30

paragraph 99(4)(c).

111 The following provisions –

paragraph 28, so far as relating to the repeal of section 349(3) of CTA 2009, and

paragraph 50, so far as relating to the repeal of section 454 of CTA 2009, have effect where conditions A and B in section 454 of CTA 2009 were first met in relation to the asset on or after the day on which this Act is passed. 35

112 The following provisions –

paragraph 45(b),

paragraph 50, so far as relating to the repeal of section 455 of CTA 2009,

paragraph 89(a) and 40

paragraph 93,

have effect in relation to disposals on or after the day on which this Act is passed.

- 113 Paragraph 48 has effect where the scheme was effected, or the arrangements were made, on or after the day on which this Act is passed.

*Transitional adjustments relating to loan relationships*

- 114 (1) This paragraph applies to a loan relationship of a company if –
- (a) amounts relating to the matters mentioned in section 306A(1) of CTA 2009 (as inserted by paragraph 3) in respect of the loan relationship have in accordance with generally accepted accounting practice been recognised in the company’s accounts as items of other comprehensive income, 5
  - (b) those amounts have not subsequently been transferred to become items of profit or loss in an accounting period beginning before 1 January 2016, and 10
  - (c) those amounts have been brought into account for corporation tax purposes in an accounting period beginning before 1 January 2016.
- (2) There is to be made an overall transitional adjustment of such amount as is just and reasonable in the circumstances having regard to the amounts which would otherwise be brought into account twice by the company for those purposes as credits or debits. 15
- (3) The overall transitional adjustment must be made by making transitional adjustments in accordance with paragraph 115. 20
- (4) In determining what amounts fall within sub-paragraph (1), it is to be assumed that the accounting policy applied in drawing up the company’s accounts for the last accounting period of the company beginning before 1 January 2016 (“the pre-commencement period”) was also applied in previous accounting periods. 25
- (5) But if the company’s accounts for the pre-commencement period are in accordance with generally accepted accounting practice drawn up on an assumption as to the accounting policy in previous accounting periods which differs from that mentioned in sub-paragraph (4), that different assumption applies in determining what amounts fall within sub-paragraph (1). 30
- 115 (1) If paragraph 114 applies in relation to a loan relationship of a company, then for each relevant accounting period a credit or debit of an amount equal to the transitional adjustment for the period must be brought into account for the purposes of Part 5 of CTA 2009 in the same way as a credit or debit which is brought into account in determining the company’s profit or loss for the period in accordance with generally accepted accounting practice. 35
- (2) The relevant accounting periods are –
- (a) the first accounting period of the company beginning on or after 1 January 2016, and 40
  - (b) each subsequent accounting period all or part of which falls within the transitional years.
- (3) The transitional years are the 5 years beginning with the first day of the first accounting period of the company beginning on or after 1 January 2016.
- (4) The transitional adjustment for each relevant accounting period is calculated as follows. 45

- (5) Allocate a percentage of the overall transitional adjustment (determined under paragraph 114) to each of the 5 transitional years as follows –

1st year	40%
2nd year	25%
3rd year	15%
4th year	10%
5th year	10%

- (6) If a transitional year coincides with an accounting period, the transitional adjustment for the accounting period is the amount allocated to that year.
- (7) In any other case – 10
- (a) apportion the amount allocated to each transitional year between accounting periods according to the number of days in the transitional year which fall within each period, and
- (b) the transitional adjustment for an accounting period is the total of the amounts apportioned to that period. 15
- 116 Paragraphs 114 and 115 do not require an amount to be brought into account if it has already been brought into account under regulations under –
- (a) section 151E of TCGA 1992 (exchange gains and losses from loan relationships: regulations), or
- (b) section 328 of CTA 2009 (exchange gains and losses). 20
- 117 (1) This paragraph applies if either of the following provisions of CTA 2009 applies in relation to the first accounting period of a company beginning on or after 1 January 2016 –
- (a) section 316 (change of accounting policy involving change of value), as substituted by paragraph 10, and
- (b) section 318 (change of accounting policy following cessation of loan relationship), as amended by paragraph 12. 25
- (2) The overall transitional adjustment required by paragraphs 114 and 115 is to be calculated and applied before calculating any credit or debit required by section 316 or 318 of CTA 2009. 30
- 118 (1) This paragraph applies if –
- (a) an overall transitional adjustment is required by paragraph 114 in respect of a loan relationship of a company, and
- (b) before the end of the 5 years mentioned in paragraph 115(3), the company – 35
- (i) ceases to be within the charge to corporation tax, or
- (ii) starts to be wound up.
- (2) The company must bring into account for the purposes of Part 5 of CTA 2009 in the accounting period ending with the event within sub-paragraph (1)(b) a credit or debit of an amount equal to so much of the overall transitional adjustment as has not previously been brought into account. 40
- (3) For the purposes of this paragraph a company starts to be wound up –

- (a) when the company passes a resolution for the winding up of the company,
- (b) when a petition for the winding up of the company is presented, if the company has not already passed such a resolution and a winding up order is made on the petition, or 5
- (c) when an act is done in relation to the company for a similar purpose, if the winding up is not under the Insolvency Act 1986.

*Transitional adjustments relating to derivative contracts*

- 119 (1) This paragraph applies to a derivative contract of a company if –
- (a) amounts relating to the matters mentioned in section 594A(1) of CTA 2009 (as inserted by paragraph 61) in respect of the derivative contract have in accordance with generally accepted accounting practice been recognised in the company’s accounts as items of other comprehensive income, 10
  - (b) those amounts have not subsequently been transferred to become items of profit or loss in an accounting period beginning before 1 January 2016, and 15
  - (c) those amounts have been brought into account for corporation tax purposes in an accounting period beginning before 1 January 2016.
- (2) There is to be made an overall transitional adjustment of such amount as is just and reasonable in the circumstances having regard to the amounts which would otherwise be brought into account twice by the company for those purposes as credits or debits. 20
- (3) The overall transitional adjustment must be made by making transitional adjustments in accordance with paragraph 120. 25
- (4) In determining what amounts fall within sub-paragraph (1), it is to be assumed that the accounting policy applied in drawing up the company’s accounts for the last accounting period of the company beginning before 1 January 2016 (“the pre-commencement period”) was also applied in previous accounting periods. 30
- (5) But if the company’s accounts for the pre-commencement period are in accordance with generally accepted accounting practice drawn up on an assumption as to the accounting policy in previous accounting periods which differs from that mentioned in sub-paragraph (4), that different assumption applies in determining what amounts fall within sub-paragraph (1). 35
- 120 (1) If paragraph 119 applies in relation to a derivative contract of a company, then for each relevant accounting period a credit or debit of an amount equal to the transitional adjustment for the period must be brought into account for the purposes of Part 7 of CTA 2009 in the same way as a credit or debit which is brought into account in determining the company’s profit or loss for the period in accordance with generally accepted accounting practice. 40
- (2) The relevant accounting periods are –
- (a) the first accounting period of the company beginning on or after 1 January 2016, and 45
  - (b) each subsequent accounting period all or part of which falls within the transitional years.

- (3) The transitional years are the 5 years beginning with the first day of the first accounting period of the company beginning on or after 1 January 2016.
- (4) The transitional adjustment for each relevant accounting period is calculated as follows.
- (5) Allocate a percentage of the overall transitional adjustment (determined under paragraph 119) to each of the 5 transitional years as follows –

5

1st year	40%
2nd year	25%
3rd year	15%
4th year	10%
5th year	10%

10

- (6) If a transitional year coincides with an accounting period, the transitional adjustment for the accounting period is the amount allocated to that year.
- (7) In any other case –
- (a) apportion the amount allocated to each transitional year between accounting periods according to the number of days in the transitional year which fall within each period, and
- (b) the transitional adjustment for an accounting period is the total of the amounts apportioned to that period.
- 121 Paragraphs 119 and 120 do not require an amount to be brought into account if it has already been brought into account under regulations under section 606 of CTA 2009 (exchange gains and losses). 20
- 122 (1) This paragraph applies if either of the following provisions of CTA 2009 applies in relation to the first accounting period of a company beginning on or after 1 January 2016 – 25
- (a) section 614 (change of accounting policy involving change of value), as substituted by paragraph 76, and
- (b) section 615 (change of accounting policy after ceasing to be a party to derivative contract), as amended by paragraph 77.
- (2) The overall transitional adjustment required by paragraphs 119 and 120 is to be calculated and applied before calculating any credit or debit required by section 614 or 615 of CTA 2009. 30
- 123 (1) This paragraph applies if –
- (a) an overall transitional adjustment is required by paragraph 119 in respect of a derivative contract of a company, and 35
- (b) before the end of the 5 years mentioned in paragraph 120(3), the company –
- (i) ceases to be within the charge to corporation tax, or
- (ii) starts to be wound up.
- (2) The company must bring into account for the purposes of Part 5 of CTA 2009 in the accounting period ending with the event within sub-paragraph (1)(b) a credit or debit of an amount equal to so much of the overall transitional adjustment as has not previously been brought into account. 40

- (3) For the purposes of this paragraph a company starts to be wound up –
- (a) when the company passes a resolution for the winding up of the company,
  - (b) when a petition for the winding up of the company is presented, if the company has not already passed such a resolution and a winding up order is made on the petition, or 5
  - (c) when an act is done in relation to the company for a similar purpose, if the winding up is not under the Insolvency Act 1986.

*Straddling accounting periods treated as split for certain purposes*

- 124 If a company has an accounting period which begins before and ends on or after 1 January 2016 (“the straddling period”), so much of the straddling period as falls before that date, and so much of that period as falls on or after that date, are treated for the purposes of each of the following provisions as separate accounting periods – 10
- paragraph 20(4), so far as relating to section 328(3C) of CTA 2009, and 15
  - paragraph 68(4), so far as relating to section 606(3C) of that Act.

*Transitional provision relating to abolition of “fairly represents” test*

- 125 If in an accounting period beginning before 1 January 2016, subsection (3) of section 307 of CTA 2009 prevents a company from bringing into account for the purposes of Part 5 of that Act a credit or debit that it would otherwise bring into account, no debit or credit is to be brought into account for those purposes under section 307 as amended by paragraph 4 in an accounting period beginning on or after 1 January 2016 to the extent that the debit or credit represents a reversal (in whole or part) of the debit or credit previously excluded. 20 25
- 126 If in an accounting period beginning before 1 January 2016, subsection (3) of section 595 of CTA 2009 prevents a company from bringing into account for the purposes of Part 7 of that Act a credit or debit that it would otherwise bring into account, no debit or credit is to be brought into account for those purposes under section 595 as amended by paragraph 62 in an accounting period beginning on or after 1 January 2016 to the extent that the debit or credit represents a reversal (in whole or part) of the debit or credit previously excluded. 30

*Transitional provision relating to fixed capital asset or project*

- 127 If in an accounting period of a company beginning before 1 January 2016 credits or debits relating to a fixed capital asset or project were as a result of section 320 of CTA 2009 brought into account for the purposes of Part 5 of that Act, the condition in subsection (1)(c) of section 320 as amended by paragraph 13 is to be taken to be met in relation to that fixed capital asset or project in subsequent accounting periods. 35 40
- 128 If in an accounting period of a company beginning before 1 January 2016 credits or debits relating to a fixed capital asset or project were as a result of section 604 of CTA 2009 brought into account for the purposes of Part 7 of that Act, the condition in subsection (1)(c) of section 604 as amended by paragraph 65 is to be taken to be met in relation to that fixed capital asset or project in subsequent accounting periods. 45

SCHEDULE 8

Section 47

ENFORCEMENT BY DEDUCTION FROM ACCOUNTS

PART 1

SCHEME FOR ENFORCEMENT BY DEDUCTION FROM ACCOUNTS

<i>Introduction</i>	5
1 This Part of this Schedule contains provision about the collection of amounts due and payable to the Commissioners by the making of deductions from accounts held with deposit-takers.	
<i>“Relevant sum”</i>	
2 (1) In this Part of this Schedule “relevant sum”, in relation to a person, means a sum that is due and payable by the person to the Commissioners – (a) under or by virtue of an enactment, or (b) under a contract settlement, and in relation to which Conditions A to C are met.	10
(2) Condition A is that the sum is at least £1,000.	15
(3) Condition B is that the sum is – (a) an established debt (see sub-paragraph (5)), (b) due under section 223 of, or paragraph 6 of Schedule 32 to, FA 2014 (accelerated payment notice or partner payment notice), or (c) the disputed tax specified in a notice under section 221(2)(b) of FA 2014 (accelerated payment of tax: notice given pending appeal).	20
(4) Condition C is that HMRC is satisfied that the person is aware that the sum is due and payable by the person to the Commissioners.	
(5) A sum that is due and payable to the Commissioners is an “established debt” if there is no possibility that the sum, or any part of it, will cease to be due and payable to the Commissioners on appeal.	25
(6) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (5) it does not matter whether the reason that there is no such possibility is – (a) that there is no right of appeal in relation to the sum, (b) that a period for bringing an appeal has expired without an appeal having been brought, or (c) that an appeal which was brought has been finally determined or withdrawn; and any power to grant permission to appeal out of time is to be disregarded.	30 35
<i>Information notice</i>	
3 (1) This paragraph applies if it appears to HMRC that – (a) a person has failed to pay a relevant sum, and (b) that person holds one or more accounts with a deposit-taker.	

- (2) HMRC may give the deposit-taker a notice under this paragraph (an “information notice”) requiring the deposit-taker to provide HMRC with –
- (a) prescribed information about accounts held by the person with the deposit-taker,
  - (b) in relation to any joint account held by the person with the deposit-taker, prescribed information about the other holder or holders of the account, and
  - (c) any other prescribed information.
- (3) HMRC may exercise the power under sub-paragraph (2) only for the purposes of determining whether to give a hold notice to the deposit-taker in respect of the person concerned (see paragraph 4). 5
- (4) Where a deposit-taker is given an information notice, it must comply with the notice as soon as reasonably practicable and, in any event, within the period of 10 working days beginning with the day on which the notice is given to it. 10
- (5) An information notice must explain the effect of –
- (a) sub-paragraph (4), and
  - (b) paragraph 13 (penalties). 15

*Hold notice*

- 4 (1) If it appears to HMRC that –
- (a) a person (“P”) has failed to pay a relevant sum, and
  - (b) P holds one or more accounts with a deposit-taker,
- HMRC may give the deposit-taker a notice under this paragraph (a “hold notice”). 20
- (2) The hold notice must –
- (a) specify P’s name and last known address,
  - (b) specify as the “specified amount” an amount that meets the conditions in sub-paragraph (4),
  - (c) specify as the “safeguarded amount” an amount that meets the requirements set out in sub-paragraphs (6) to (8),
  - (d) set out any rules which are to apply for the purposes of paragraph 6(5)(b) (priority of accounts subject to a hold notice), and
  - (e) explain the effect of –
- (i) paragraphs 5 to 12 (effect of hold notice, duty to notify account holders etc),
  - (ii) paragraph 13 (penalties), and
  - (iii) any regulations under paragraph 19(2)(c) or (d) (powers to restrict the accounts or amounts in relation to which a hold notice may have effect, in addition to the powers to make provision in the hold notice under sub-paragraph (3)(b) and (c)). 25
- For provision about the particular relevant sums to which a hold notice relates see paragraph 7(6)(a)(ii) and (7) (notice to be given by HMRC to P). 30
- (3) The hold notice may –
- (a) specify any other information which HMRC considers might assist the deposit-taker in identifying accounts which P holds with it; 35
- 40
- 45

- (b) specify an account, or description of account, which is to be treated for the purposes of the hold notice and this Part of this Schedule as not being an account held by P with the deposit-taker;
- (c) require that an amount specified in the notice is to be treated for the purposes of the hold notice and this Part of this Schedule as if it were not an amount standing to the credit of a specified account held by P. 5
- (4) The amount specified as the specified amount in the hold notice (“the current hold notice”) must not exceed so much of the notified sum (see paragraph 7(6) to (8)) as remains after deducting –
- (a) the amount specified as the “specified amount” in any hold notice which relates to the same debts as the current hold notice (see sub-paragraph (5)) and is given to another deposit-taker on the same day as that notice, and 10
- (b) the amount specified as the “specified amount” in any hold notice which relates to the same debts as the current hold notice and is given to a deposit-taker on an earlier day, (unless HMRC has received a notification under paragraph 7(4) in relation to that earlier hold notice). 15
- (5) For the purposes of this paragraph, any two hold notices given in respect of the same person “relate to the same debts” if at least one relevant sum specified in relation to one of those notices by virtue of paragraph 7(7)(a) is the same debt as a relevant sum so specified in relation to the other notice. 20
- (6) The amount specified in the hold notice as the safeguarded amount must be at least £5,000; but this is qualified by sub-paragraphs (7) and (8).
- (7) The safeguarded amount must be nil if – 25
- (a) HMRC has previously given a deposit-taker a hold notice (“the earlier hold notice”) relating to the same debts as the hold notice mentioned in sub-paragraph (2) (“the new hold notice”), and
- (b) within the period of 30 days ending with the day on which the new hold notice is given to the deposit-taker, HMRC has received a notice under paragraph 7 which states that there is a held amount as a result of the earlier hold notice. 30
- (8) HMRC may (in a case not falling within sub-paragraph (7)) determine that an amount less than £5,000 (which may be nil) is to be the safeguarded amount if HMRC considers it appropriate to do so having regard to the value (or aggregate value) in sterling at the relevant time of any amounts which at that time stand to the credit of a qualifying non-sterling account or accounts. 35
- (9) In sub-paragraph (8) “qualifying non-sterling account” means an account which, but for paragraph 5(6)(b) (account not denominated in sterling), would be a relevant account in relation to the hold notice. 40
- (10) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (8), the value in sterling of any amount is to be determined in the prescribed manner; and regulations for the purposes of this sub-paragraph may specify circumstances in which the exchange rate is to be determined in accordance with a notice published by the Commissioners. 45
- (11) In sub-paragraph (8) “the relevant time” means the time when the Commissioners determine the amount to be specified as the “safeguarded amount” under sub-paragraph (2)(c).

- (12) HMRC must not on any one day give to a single deposit-taker more than one hold notice relating to the same debts.

*Effect of hold notice*

- 5 (1) A deposit-taker to whom a hold notice is given under paragraph 4 must, for each relevant account (see sub-paragraph (6)) – 5
- (a) determine whether or not there is a held amount (greater than nil) in relation to that account, and
  - (b) if there is such a held amount in relation to that account, take the first or second type of action (see sub-paragraph (3)) in respect of that account. 10
- See paragraph 6 for how to determine the held amount in relation to any relevant account.
- (2) The deposit-taker must comply with sub-paragraph (1) as soon as is reasonably practicable and, in any event, within the period of 5 working days beginning with the day on which the hold notice is given. 15
- (3) In relation to each affected account (see sub-paragraph (7)) –
- (a) the first type of action is to put in place such arrangements as are necessary to ensure that the deposit-taker does not do anything, or permit anything to be done, that would reduce the amount standing to the credit of that account below the held amount in relation to that account; 20
  - (b) the second type of action is to –
    - (i) transfer an amount equal to the held amount from the affected account into an account created by the deposit-taker for the sole purpose of containing that transferred amount (a “suspense account”), and 25
    - (ii) put in place such arrangements as are necessary to ensure that the deposit-taker does not do anything, or permit anything to be done, that would reduce the amount standing to the credit of that suspense account below the amount that is the held amount in relation to the affected account. 30
- (4) The deposit-taker must maintain any arrangements made under sub-paragraph (3) until the hold notice ceases to be in force.
- (5) A hold notice ceases to be in force when – 35
- (a) the deposit-taker is given a notice cancelling it under paragraph 8(1) or 10 or the hold notice is cancelled under paragraph 11, or
  - (b) the deposit-taker is given a deduction notice in relation to the hold notice (see paragraph 12).
- (6) In this Part of this Schedule “relevant account”, in relation to a hold notice, means an account held with the deposit-taker by P, but not including – 40
- (a) an account excluded under paragraph 4(3)(b) or by regulations under paragraph 19(2)(c),
  - (b) an account not denominated in sterling, or
  - (c) any suspense account.
- (7) For the purposes of this Part of this Schedule, a relevant account is an “affected account” if, as a result of the hold notice, an amount is the held amount in relation to that account (see paragraph 6(1) and (2)). 45

*Determination of held amounts*

- 6 (1) If there is only one relevant account (see paragraph 5(6)) in existence at the time the deposit-taker complies with paragraph 5(1), “the held amount” in relation to that account is –
- (a) if the available amount in respect of the account (see sub-paragraph (3)) exceeds the safeguarded amount, so much of the amount of the excess as does not exceed the specified amount, and 5
  - (b) if the available amount does not exceed the safeguarded amount, nil.
- For the meaning of “the safeguarded amount” and “the specified amount” see paragraph 22(1). 10
- (2) If there is more than one relevant account in existence at the time the deposit-taker complies with paragraph 5(1), “the held amount” in relation to each relevant account is determined as follows –
- Step 1*  
Determine the available amount in respect of each relevant account. 15
- Step 2*  
Determine the total of the available amounts in respect of all of the relevant accounts.  
If that total does not exceed the safeguarded amount, the held amount in relation to each relevant account is nil (and no further steps are to be taken). 20  
In any other case, go to Step 3.
- Step 3*  
Match the safeguarded amount against the available amounts in respect of the relevant accounts, taking those accounts in reverse priority order (see sub-paragraph (6)). 25
- Step 4*  
Match the specified amount against what remains of the available amounts in respect of the relevant accounts by taking each relevant account in priority order (see sub-paragraph (5)) and matching the specified amount (or, as the case may be, what remains of the specified amount) against the available amount for each account until either – 30
- (a) the specified amount has been fully matched, or
  - (b) what remains of the available amounts is exhausted.
- Where this sub-paragraph applies, “the held amount”, in relation to a relevant account – 35
- (i) is so much of the amount standing to the credit of the account as is matched against the specified amount under Step 4, and
  - (ii) accordingly, is nil if no amount standing to the credit of the account is so matched against the specified amount. 40
- (3) In this paragraph “the available amount” means –
- (a) in the case of an account other than a joint account, the amount standing to the credit of that account at the time the deposit-taker complies with paragraph 5(1), or
  - (b) in the case of a joint account, the appropriate fraction of the amount standing to the credit of that account at that time; 45
- so, if no amount stands to the credit of an account at that time, “the available amount” is nil.

- (4) In this paragraph “the appropriate fraction”, in relation to a joint account, means –

$$\frac{1}{N}$$

where N is the number of persons who together hold the joint account.

- (5) In this paragraph “priority order” means such order as the deposit-taker considers appropriate, but the deposit-taker must ensure – 5
- (a) that accounts other than joint accounts always have a higher priority than joint accounts, and
  - (b) subject to paragraph (a), that any rule set out in the hold notice under paragraph 4(2)(d) is adhered to. 10
- (6) In this paragraph “reverse priority order” means the reverse of the order determined under sub-paragraph (5).
- (7) In this paragraph references to an amount standing to the credit of an account are to be read subject to any regulations under paragraph 19(2)(d).

*Duty to notify HMRC and account holders etc* 15

- 7 (1) This paragraph applies where a deposit-taker receives a hold notice.
- (2) If the deposit-taker determines that there are one or more affected accounts (see paragraph 5(7)) as a result of the hold notice, the deposit-taker must give HMRC a notice which sets out – 20
- (a) prescribed information about each of the affected accounts held by P,
  - (b) the amount of the held amount in relation to each such account,
  - (c) if any of the affected accounts is a joint account held by P and one or more other persons, prescribed information about the other person or persons, and
  - (d) any other prescribed information. 25
- (3) The notice under sub-paragraph (2) must be given within the period of 5 working days beginning with the day on which the deposit-taker complies with paragraph 5(1).
- (4) If the deposit-taker determines that there are no affected accounts as a result of the hold notice, it must give HMRC a notice which – 30
- (a) states that this is the case, and
  - (b) sets out any other prescribed information.
- (5) The notice under sub-paragraph (4) must be given within the period of 5 working days beginning with the day on which the deposit-taker makes that determination. 35
- (6) If HMRC receives a notice under sub-paragraph (2) it must as soon as reasonably practicable –
- (a) give P – 40
    - (i) a copy of the hold notice, and
    - (ii) a notice under sub-paragraph (7), and
  - (b) in relation to each affected account, give a notice to each person within sub-paragraph (9) explaining that a hold notice has been given in respect of the account, the effect of the hold notice so far as it relates to the account and the effect of paragraphs 9 to 11.

- (7) A notice under this sub-paragraph must comply with the following requirements –
- (a) the notice must specify the particular relevant sums (see paragraph 2) to which the hold notice relates;
  - (b) the details given for that purpose must include a statement, to the best of HMRC’s knowledge, of the amount of each of those sums (that is, the unpaid amount) at the date of the notice; 5
  - (c) the notice must state the total of the amounts stated under paragraph (b) (if more than one), and
  - (d) the notice must state that the notified sum for the purposes of the hold notice (see paragraph 4(4)) is equal to – 10
    - (i) the total amount specified under paragraph (c) or,
    - (ii) if paragraph (c) is not applicable, the amount specified under paragraph (b) as the amount of the relevant sum to which the hold notice relates. 15
- (8) In this Part of this Schedule “the notified sum”, in relation to a hold notice, means the amount identified as such (or that is to be identified as such) in the notice under sub-paragraph (7).
- (9) The persons mentioned in sub-paragraph (6)(b) are –
- (a) in the case of a joint account, any holder of the account other than P, and 20
  - (b) any person (not falling within paragraph (a)) who is an interested third party in relation to the affected account,
- in respect of whom prescribed information has been provided under sub-paragraph (2)(c) or sufficient information has otherwise been given in the notice under sub-paragraph (2) to enable HMRC to give a notice. 25
- (10) After the deposit-taker has complied with paragraph 5(1), the deposit-taker may, in relation to any affected account, give a notice to –
- (a) P,
  - (b) if the account is a joint account, any other holder of the account, and 30
  - (c) any person (not falling within paragraph (b)) who is an interested third party in relation to the account,
- which states that a hold notice has been received by the deposit-taker in respect of the account and the effect of that notice so far as it relates to that account. 35
- (11) In this Part of this Schedule “interested third party”, in relation to a relevant account, means a person other than P who has a beneficial interest in –
- (a) an amount standing to the credit of the account, or
  - (b) an amount which has been transferred from that account to a suspense account. 40
- (12) But, in relation to a hold notice, an interest which comes into existence after any arrangements under paragraph 5(3) have been put into place is treated as not being a beneficial interest for the purposes of sub-paragraph (11).

*Cancellation or variation of effects of hold notice*

- 8 (1) Where a hold notice has been given to a deposit-taker HMRC may, by a notice given to the deposit-taker (a “notice of cancellation or variation”) – 45
- (a) cancel the hold notice,

- (b) cancel the effect of the hold notice in relation to one or more accounts, or
  - (c) cancel the effect of the hold notice in relation to any part of the held amount standing to the credit of a particular account or accounts.
- In this sub-paragraph references to the effect of a hold notice are to its effect by virtue of paragraph 5(4). 5
- (2) Where HMRC gives a notice under sub-paragraph (1) it must give a copy of that notice to –
- (a) P, and
  - (b) any other person who HMRC considers is affected by the giving of the notice of cancellation or variation and is –
    - (i) a person who holds a relevant account of which P is also a holder and in respect of whom prescribed information is provided under paragraph 7(2)(c), or
    - (ii) an interested third party in relation to a relevant account in respect of whom sufficient information has been given in the notice under paragraph 7(2) to enable HMRC to give a notice. 15
- (3) Where the deposit-taker is given a notice under sub-paragraph (1), it must as soon as reasonably practicable and, in any event, within the period of 5 working days beginning with the day the notice is given – 20
- (a) if the notice is given under sub-paragraph (1)(a), cancel the arrangements made under paragraph 5(3) as a result of the notice, and
  - (b) if the notice is given under sub-paragraph (1)(b) or (c), make such adjustments to those arrangements as are necessary to give effect to the notice. 25

*Making objections to hold notice*

- 9 (1) Where a hold notice is given to a deposit-taker, a person within sub-paragraph (2) may by a notice given to HMRC (a “notice of objection”) object against the hold notice. 30
- (2) The persons who may object are –
- (a) P,
  - (b) any interested third party in relation to an affected account, and
  - (c) any person (not falling within paragraph (a) or (b)) who is a holder of an affected account which is a joint account, 35
- but only P may object on the ground in sub-paragraph (3)(a).
- (3) An objection may only be made on one or more of the following grounds –
- (a) that the debts to which the hold notice relates (see paragraph 7(7)(a)) have been wholly or partly paid,
  - (b) that at the time when the hold notice was given, either there was no sum that was a relevant sum in relation to P or P did not hold any account with the deposit-taker, 40
  - (c) that the hold notice is causing or will cause exceptional hardship to the person making the objection or another person, or
  - (d) that there is an interested third party in relation to one or more of the affected accounts. 45
- (4) A notice of objection must state the grounds of the objection.

- (5) Objections under this paragraph may only be made within the period of 30 days beginning with –
- (a) in the case of –
    - (i) P, or
    - (ii) a person within sub-paragraph (2)(b) or (c) who has not been given a notice under paragraph 7(6)(b),  
the day on which a copy of the hold notice is given to P under paragraph 7(6)(a), and
  - (b) in the case of a person given a notice under paragraph 7(6)(b), the day on which that notice is given.
- (6) Sub-paragraph (5) does not apply if HMRC agree to the notice of objection being given after the end of the period mentioned in that sub-paragraph.
- (7) HMRC must agree to a notice of objection being given after the end of that period if the following conditions are met –
- (a) the person seeking to make the objection has made a request in writing to HMRC to agree to the notice of objection being given;
  - (b) HMRC is satisfied that there was reasonable excuse for not giving the notice before the relevant time limit, and
  - (c) HMRC is satisfied that the person complied with paragraph (a) without unreasonable delay after the reasonable excuse ceased.
- (8) If a request of the kind referred to in sub-paragraph (7)(a) is made, HMRC must by a notice inform the person making the request whether or not HMRC agrees to the request.
- (9) Nothing in Part 5 of TMA 1970 (appeals and other proceedings) applies to an objection under this paragraph.

*Consideration of objections*

- 10 (1) HMRC must consider any objections made under paragraph 9 within 30 working days of being given the notice of objection.
- (2) Having considered the objections, HMRC must decide whether –
- (a) to cancel the hold notice,
  - (b) to cancel the effect of the hold notice in relation to the held amount, or any part of the held amount, in respect of a particular account or accounts, or
  - (c) to dismiss the objection.
- (3) HMRC must give a notice stating its decision to –
- (a) P,
  - (b) each person other than P who objected, and
  - (c) any other person who HMRC considers is affected by the decision and is –
    - (i) a person who holds a relevant account of which P is also a holder and in respect of whom prescribed information is provided under paragraph 7(2)(c), or
    - (ii) an interested third party in relation to a relevant account in respect of whom sufficient information has been given in the notice under paragraph 7(2) to enable HMRC to give a notice.
- (4) HMRC must, by a notice to the deposit-taker –

- (a) if it makes a decision under sub-paragraph (2)(a), cancel the hold notice;
  - (b) if it makes a decision under sub-paragraph (2)(b), cancel the effect of the hold notice in relation to the accounts or amounts in question.
- (5) HMRC must give each person to whom HMRC is required to give a notice under sub-paragraph (3) a copy of any notice given to the deposit-taker under sub-paragraph (4). 5
- (6) Where the deposit-taker is given a notice under sub-paragraph (4), it must as soon as reasonably practicable and, in any event, within the period of 5 working days beginning with the day the notice is given – 10
- (a) if the notice is given under sub-paragraph (4)(a), cancel the arrangements mentioned in paragraph 5(3), or
  - (b) if the notice is given under sub-paragraph (4)(b), make such adjustments to those arrangements as are necessary to give effect to the notice. 15
- (7) In this paragraph references to the effect of a hold notice are to its effect by virtue of paragraph 5(4).

### *Appeals*

- 11 (1) Where HMRC makes a decision under paragraph (b) or (c) of paragraph 10(2), a person within sub-paragraph (2) may appeal against the hold notice. 20
- (2) The persons who may appeal are –
- (a) P,
  - (b) any interested third party in relation to an affected account, and
  - (c) any person not falling within paragraph (a) or (b) who is a holder of an affected account which is a joint account. 25
- (3) An appeal may only be made on one or more of the grounds set out in paragraph 9(3) (and for this purpose the reference in paragraph 9(3)(c) to “the objection” is to be read as a reference to the appeal).
- (4) An appeal under sub-paragraph (1) must be made – 30
- (a) in England and Wales, to the county court, and
  - (b) in Northern Ireland, to a county court.
- (5) An appeal under this paragraph may only be made within the period of 30 days beginning –
- (a) in the case of a person given a notice of HMRC’s decision under paragraph 10(3), with the day on which that notice is given to that person, and
  - (b) in the case of any person within sub-paragraph (2)(b) or (c) to whom such a notice has not been given, the day on which P is given such a notice. 35
- (6) A notice of appeal must state the grounds of appeal. 40
- (7) On an appeal under this paragraph, the court may –
- (a) cancel the hold notice,
  - (b) cancel the effect of the hold notice in relation to the held amount, or any part of the held amount, in respect of a particular account or accounts, or 45

- (c) dismiss the appeal.
- (8) Where the deposit-taker is served with an order made by the court under sub-paragraph (7)(a) or (b), the deposit-taker must as soon as reasonably practicable and, in any event, within the period of 5 working days beginning with the day the notice is given take such steps as are necessary to give effect to the order. 5
- (9) Where an appeal on the ground that the hold notice is causing or will cause the person making the appeal or another person exceptional hardship (or a further appeal following such an appeal) is pending, the court to which the appeal is made may, on an application made by the person who made the appeal – 10
  - (a) suspend the effect of the hold notice if adequate security is provided in respect of so much of the notified sum as remains unpaid,
  - (b) suspend the effect of the hold notice in relation to a particular account if adequate security is provided in respect of the held amount in relation to that account, or 15
  - (c) suspend the effect of the hold notice in relation to any part of the held amount standing to the credit of a particular account, if adequate security is provided in respect of that part.
- (10) In this paragraph references to the effect of a hold notice are to its effect by virtue of paragraph 5(4). 20
- (11) Nothing in Part 5 of TMA 1970 (appeals and other proceedings) applies to an appeal under this paragraph.

*Deduction notice*

- 12 (1) If it appears to HMRC that a person in respect of whom a hold notice given to a deposit-taker is in force – 25
  - (a) has failed to pay a relevant sum, and
  - (b) holds an account (or more than one account) with the deposit-taker in respect of which there is a held amount in relation to that sum,HMRC may give the deposit-taker a deduction notice in respect of that person. 30
- (2) A “deduction notice” is a notice which –
  - (a) specifies the name of the person concerned,
  - (b) specifies one or more affected accounts held by that person with the deposit-taker, and 35
  - (c) in relation to each such specified account requires the deposit-taker to deduct and pay a qualifying amount (see sub-paragraph (6)) to the Commissioners by a day specified in the notice.
- (3) Where a deduction notice specifies a particular affected account –
  - (a) the deduction required to be made in relation to that account by virtue of sub-paragraph (2)(c) must be made from the appropriate account, that is to say – 40
    - (i) if the deposit-taker has by virtue of the hold notice transferred an amount from the specified account into a suspense account, that suspense account, or 45
    - (ii) otherwise, the specified account, and

- 
- (b) the deposit-taker must not during the period in which the deduction notice is in force do anything, or permit anything to be done (except in accordance with paragraph (a)) that would reduce the amount standing to the credit of the appropriate account below the balance required for the purpose of making that deduction. 5
- (4) A deduction notice must explain the effect of sub-paragraph (4)(b) and paragraph 13 (penalties).
- (5) A deduction notice may not be given in respect of an account unless –
- (a) the period for making an objection under paragraph 9 has expired and either no objections were made or any objection made has been decided or withdrawn, and 10
- (b) if objections were made and decided, the period for appealing under paragraph 11 has expired and any appeal or further appeal has been finally determined.
- (6) In this paragraph “qualifying amount”, in relation to an affected account, means an amount not exceeding the held amount in relation to that account (as modified, where applicable, under paragraph 8(3)(b), 10(6)(b) or 11(7)(b)). 15
- (7) The total of the qualifying amounts specified in the deduction notice must not exceed the unpaid amount of the notified sum (see paragraph 7(8)). 20
- (8) HMRC must –
- (a) give a copy of the deduction notice to the person in respect of whom it is given, and
- (b) in the case of each account in respect of which the notice is given, give a notice to each person within sub-paragraph (9) explaining that a deduction notice has been given in respect of that account and the effect of the deduction notice so far as it relates to that account. 25
- (9) The persons mentioned in sub-paragraph (8)(b) are –
- (a) if the account is a joint account, each person other than P who is a holder of the account, and 30
- (b) any person (not falling within paragraph (a)) –
- (i) who is an interested third party in relation to the account whom HMRC knows will be affected by the deduction notice, and
- (ii) about whom HMRC has sufficient information to enable it to give the notice under sub-paragraph (8)(b). 35
- (10) HMRC may, by a notice given to the deposit-taker, amend or cancel the deduction notice, and where it does so it must –
- (a) give a copy of the notice under this sub-paragraph to the person in respect of whom the deduction notice was given, and 40
- (b) in the case of each account affected by the amendment or cancellation, give a notice to each person within sub-paragraph (9) explaining the effect of the amendment or cancellation so far as it relates to that account.
- (11) The deduction notice – 45
- (a) comes into force at the time it is given to the deposit-taker, and
- (b) ceases to be in force at the time –

- (i) the deposit-taker is given a notice cancelling it under sub-paragraph (10), or
- (ii) the deposit-taker makes the final payment required by virtue of sub-paragraph (2)(c).

*Penalties* 5

- 13 (1) This paragraph applies to a deposit-taker who –
- (a) fails to comply with an information notice,
  - (b) fails to comply with a hold notice or a deduction notice,
  - (c) fails to comply with an obligation under paragraph 7(2) in accordance with paragraph 7(3) (obligation to notify HMRC of effects of hold notice), 10
  - (d) fails to comply with an obligation under paragraph 7(4) in accordance with paragraph 7(5) (obligation to notify HMRC if no affected accounts),
  - (e) fails to comply with an obligation under paragraph 8(3) (obligation to cancel or modify effects of hold notice), 15
  - (f) fails to comply with an obligation under paragraph 10(6) (obligation to cancel or adjust arrangements to give effect to HMRC’s decision of objection), or
  - (g) following receipt of an information notice or hold notice in relation to an account or accounts held with the deposit-taker by a person (“the affected person”), makes a disclosure of information to the affected person or any other person in circumstances where that disclosure is likely to prejudice HMRC’s ability to use the provisions of this Part of this Schedule to recover a relevant sum owed by the affected person. 20
- (2) In sub-paragraph (1)(g), the reference to a disclosure of information does not include the giving of a notice in accordance with paragraph 7(10) to the affected person in respect of a hold notice. 25
- (3) The deposit-taker is liable to a penalty of £300. 30
- (4) If a failure within sub-paragraph (1)(a) to (f) continues after the day on which notice is given under paragraph 14(1) of a penalty in respect of the failure, the deposit-taker is liable to a further penalty or penalties not exceeding £60 for each subsequent day on which the failure continues.
- (5) A failure by a deposit-taker to do anything required to be done within a limited period of time does not give rise to liability to a penalty under this paragraph if the deposit-taker did it within such further time, if any, as HMRC may have allowed. 35
- (6) Liability to a penalty under this paragraph does not arise if the person satisfies HMRC or (on an appeal notified to the tribunal) the tribunal that there is a reasonable excuse for the failure or (as the case may be) disclosure. 40
- (7) For the purposes of this paragraph –
- (a) where the deposit-taker relies on any other person to do anything, that is not a reasonable excuse unless the deposit-taker took reasonable care to avoid the failure or disclosure, and 45
  - (b) where the deposit-taker had a reasonable excuse for the failure but the excuse has ceased, the deposit-taker is to be treated as having

continued to have the excuse if the failure is remedied without unreasonable delay after the excuse ceased.

*Assessment of penalty*

- |   |    |
|---|----|
| 14 (1) Where a deposit-taker becomes liable to a penalty under paragraph 13—  | 5  |
| (a) HMRC must assess the penalty, and   |    |
| (b) if HMRC does so, it must notify the deposit-taker in writing.   |    |
| (2) An assessment of a penalty by virtue of paragraph (a) of paragraph 13(1) must be made within the period of 12 months beginning with the day on which the deposit-taker becomes liable to the penalty. |    |
| (3) An assessment of a penalty under any of paragraphs (b) to (g) of paragraph 13(1) must be made within the period of 12 months beginning with the latest of the following—                              | 10 |
| (a) the day on which the deposit-taker became liable to the penalty,  |    |
| (b) the end of the period in which notice of an appeal in respect of the hold notice could have been given, and   | 15 |
| (c) if notice of such an appeal is given, the day on which the appeal is finally determined or withdrawn.   |    |

*Appeal against penalty*

- |  |    |
|--|----|
| 15 (1) A deposit-taker may appeal against—   | 20 |
| (a) a decision that a penalty is payable by the deposit-taker under paragraph 13, or   |    |
| (b) a decision as to the amount of such a penalty.   |    |
| (2) Notice of an appeal must be given to HMRC before the end of the period of 30 days beginning with the day on which the notification under paragraph 14 was given.   | 25 |
| (3) Notice of an appeal must state the grounds of appeal.  |    |
| (4) On an appeal under sub-paragraph (1)(a) that is notified to the tribunal (in accordance with Part 5 of TMA 1970: see below) the tribunal may confirm or cancel the decision.   |    |
| (5) On an appeal under sub-paragraph (1)(b) that is notified to the tribunal, the tribunal may—  | 30 |
| (a) confirm the decision, or   |    |
| (b) substitute for the decision another decision that HMRC had power to make.  |    |
| (6) Subject to this paragraph and paragraph 16, the provisions of Part 5 of TMA 1970 relating to appeals have effect in relation to appeals under this paragraph as they have effect in relation to an appeal against an assessment to income tax. | 35 |

*Enforcement of penalty*

- |   |    |
|---|----|
| 16 (1) A penalty under paragraph 13 must be paid—   | 40 |
| (a) before the end of the period of 30 days beginning with the day on which the notification under paragraph 14 was given, or |    |

- (b) if notice of an appeal against the penalty is given, before the end of the period of 30 days beginning with the day on which the appeal is finally determined or withdrawn.
- (2) A penalty under paragraph 13 may be enforced as if it were income tax charged in an assessment and due and payable. 5

*Protection of deposit-takers acting in good faith*

- 17 A deposit-taker is not liable for damages in respect of anything done in good faith for the purposes of complying with a hold notice or a deduction notice.

*Power to modify amounts and time limits*

- 18 (1) The Commissioners may by regulations amend any of the following provisions by substituting a different amount for the amount for the time being specified there – 10
- (a) paragraph 2(2) (requirement that relevant sum is a minimum amount);
  - (b) paragraph 4(6) and (8) (threshold for safeguarded amount); 15
  - (c) paragraph 13(3) or (4) (level of penalties).
- (2) The Commissioners may by regulations amend any of the following provisions by substituting a different period for the period for the time being specified there –
- (a) paragraph 3(4) (time limit for complying with information notices); 20
  - (b) paragraph 5(2) (time limit for complying with hold notices);
  - (c) paragraph 7(3) or (5) (time limit for notifying HMRC of effects of hold notice);
  - (d) paragraph 8(3) (cancellation etc of hold notice: time limit for cancelling or adjusting arrangements); 25
  - (e) paragraph 9(5) (time limit for making objections);
  - (f) paragraph 10(1) (time limit for consideration of objections);
  - (g) paragraph 10(6) (consideration of objections: time limit for cancelling or adjusting arrangements);
  - (h) paragraph 11(8) (appeals: time limit for compliance with court order). 30

*Power to make further provision*

- 19 (1) The Commissioners may by regulations make provision supplementing this Part of this Schedule.
- (2) The regulations may, in particular, make provision – 35
- (a) about the manner in which a notice or a copy of a notice is to be given under this Part of this Schedule, or the circumstances in which a notice or a copy of a notice is to be treated as given, for the purposes of this Part of this Schedule;
  - (b) specifying circumstances in which a notice under this Part of this Schedule may not be given; 40
  - (c) specifying descriptions of account in respect of which a hold notice or deduction notice has no effect;

- (d) specifying circumstances in which amounts standing to the credit of an account are to be treated as not standing to the credit of the account for the purposes of a hold notice or deduction notice;
- (e) about fees a deposit-taker may charge a person in respect of whom a notice is given under this Part of this Schedule towards administrative costs in complying with that notice; 5
- (f) with respect to priority as between a notice under this Part of this Schedule and –
  - (i) any other such notice, or
  - (ii) any notice or order under any other enactment. 10

### *Regulations*

- 20 (1) Regulations under this Part of this Schedule may –
- (a) make different provision for different purposes,
  - (b) include supplementary, incidental and consequential provision, or
  - (c) make transitional provision and savings. 15
- (2) Regulations under this Part of this Schedule are to be made by statutory instrument.
- (3) A statutory instrument containing only regulations within sub-paragraph (4) is subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of the House of Commons. 20
- (4) The regulations within this sub-paragraph are –
- (a) regulations which prescribe information for the purposes of paragraph 3(2) or any provision of paragraph 7,
  - (b) regulations under paragraph 4(10),
  - (c) regulations under paragraph (a), (b), (c), (d), (g) or (h) of paragraph 18(2), or
  - (d) regulations under paragraph 19(2). 25
- (5) Any other statutory instrument containing regulations under this Part of this Schedule may not be made unless a draft of the instrument has been laid before, and approved by a resolution of, the House of Commons. 30

### *Joint accounts*

- 21 In this Part of this Schedule a reference to an account held by a person includes a reference to a joint account held by that person and one or more other persons.

### *Defined terms* 35

- 22 (1) In this Part of this Schedule –
- “affected account” has the meaning given by paragraph 5(7);
  - “the Commissioners” means the Commissioners for Her Majesty’s Revenue and Customs;
  - “contract settlement” means an agreement made in connection with any person’s liability to make a payment to the Commissioners under or by virtue of an enactment; 40
  - “deduction notice” has the meaning given by paragraph 12;

- “deposit-taker” means a person who may lawfully accept deposits in the United Kingdom in the course of a business (see sub-paragraph (2));
- “HMRC” means Her Majesty’s Revenue and Customs; 5
- “hold notice” has the meaning given by paragraph 4;
- “information notice” has the meaning given by paragraph 3;
- “interested third party”, in relation to a relevant account, has the meaning given by paragraph 7(11);
- “joint account”, in relation to a person, means an account held by the person and one or more other persons; 10
- “notice” means notice in writing;
- “notified sum”, in relation to a hold notice, has the meaning given by paragraph 7(8);
- “prescribed” means prescribed by regulations made by the Commissioners; 15
- “relevant account” (in relation to a hold notice) has the meaning given by paragraph 5(6);
- “relevant sum”, in relation to a person, has the meaning given by paragraph 2(1);
- “the safeguarded amount” (in relation to a hold notice) means the amount specified as the safeguarded amount in the notice (see paragraph 4(2)(c)); 20
- “the specified amount” (in relation to a hold notice) means the amount specified as such in the notice (see paragraph 4(2)(b));
- “suspense account” has the meaning given by paragraph 5(3)(b)(i); 25
- “the tribunal” means the First-tier Tribunal;
- “working day” means a day other than –
- (a) Saturday or Sunday,
  - (b) Christmas Eve, Christmas Day or Good Friday, or
  - (c) a day which is a bank holiday under the Banking and Financial Dealings Act 1971 in England and Wales or Northern Ireland. 30
- (2) The definition of “deposit-taker” in sub-paragraph (1) is to be read with –
- (a) section 22 of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (regulated activities), 35
  - (b) any relevant order under that section, and
  - (c) Schedule 2 to that Act.

*Extent*

- 23 This Part of this Schedule extends to England and Wales and Northern Ireland. 40

PART 2

MISCELLANEOUS AMENDMENTS

*TMA 1970*

- 24 In section 28C of TMA 1970 (determination of tax where no return

delivered), after subsection (4) insert –

“(4A) Where –

- (a) action is being taken under Part 1 of Schedule 8 to the Finance (No. 2) Act 2015 (enforcement by deduction from accounts) for the recovery of an amount (“the original amount”) of tax charged by a determination under this section, and 5
- (b) before that action is concluded, the determination is superseded by such a self-assessment as is mentioned in subsection (3),

that action may be continued as if it were action for the purposes of the recovery of so much of the tax charged by the self-assessment as is due and payable, has not been paid and does not exceed the original amount.” 10

*Insolvency Act 1986*

25 The Insolvency Act 1986 is amended as follows. 15

26 In section 126 (power to stay or restrain proceedings against company), after subsection (2) insert –

- “(3) Subsection (1) applies in relation to any action being taken in respect of the company under Part 1 of Schedule 8 to the Finance (No. 2) Act 2015 (enforcement by deduction from accounts) as it applies in relation to any action or proceeding mentioned in paragraph (b) of that subsection.” 20

27 In section 128 (avoidance of attachments, etc), after subsection (2) insert –

- “(3) In subsection (1) “attachment” includes a hold notice or a deduction notice under Part 1 of Schedule 8 to the Finance (No. 2) Act 2015 (enforcement by deduction from accounts) and, if subsection (1) has effect in relation to a deduction notice, it also has effect in relation to the hold notice to which the deduction notice relates (whenever the hold notice was given).” 25

28 In section 130 (consequences of winding-up order), after subsection (3) insert – 30

- “(3A) In subsections (2) and (3), the reference to an action or proceeding includes action in respect of the company under Part 1 of Schedule 8 to the Finance (No. 2) Act 2015 (enforcement by deduction from accounts).” 35

29 (1) Section 176 (preferential charge on goods distrained) is amended as follows.

(2) For subsection (2) substitute –

“(2) Subsection (2A) applies where –

- (a) any person (whether or not a landlord or person entitled to rent) has distrained upon the goods or effects of the company, or 40
- (b) Her Majesty’s Revenue and Customs has been paid any amount from an account of the company under Part 1 of Schedule 8 to the Finance (No. 2) Act 2015 (enforcement by deduction from accounts), 45

- in the period of 3 months ending with the date of the winding-up order.
- (2A) Where this subsection applies –
- (a) in a case within subsection (2)(a), the goods or effects, or the proceeds of their sale, and
  - (b) in a case within subsection (2)(b), the amount in question, is charged for the benefit of the company with the preferential debts of the company to the extent that the company’s property is for the time being insufficient for meeting those debts.”
- (3) In subsection (3) for “(2)” substitute “(2A)”.
- (4) Accordingly, in the heading for the section, after “distrained” insert “, etc”.
- 30 In section 183 (effect of execution or attachment (England and Wales)), after subsection (4) insert –
- “(4A) For the purposes of this section, Her Majesty’s Revenue and Customs is to be regarded as having attached a debt due to a company if it has taken action under Part 1 of Schedule 8 to the Finance (No. 2) Act 2015 (enforcement by deduction for accounts) as a result of which an amount standing to the credit of an account held by the company is –
- (a) subject to arrangements made under paragraph 5(3) of that Schedule, or
  - (b) the subject of a deduction notice under paragraph 12 of that Schedule.”
- 31 In section 346 (enforcement procedures), after subsection (1) insert –
- “(1A) For the purposes of this section, Her Majesty’s Revenue and Customs is to be regarded as having attached a debt due to a person if it has taken action under Part 1 of Schedule 8 to the Finance (No. 2) Act 2015 (enforcement by deduction from accounts) as a result of which an amount standing to the credit of an account held by that person is –
- (a) subject to arrangements made under paragraph 5(3) of that Schedule, or
  - (b) the subject of a deduction notice under paragraph 12 of that Schedule.”
- 32 (1) In section 347 (distress, etc) –
- (a) for subsection (3) substitute –
- “(3) Subsection (3A) applies where –
- (a) any person (whether or not a landlord or person entitled to rent) has distrained upon the goods or effects of an individual who is adjudged bankrupt before the end of the period of 3 months beginning with the distraint, or
  - (b) Her Majesty’s Revenue and Customs has been paid any amount from an account of an individual under Part 1 of Schedule 8 to the Finance (No. 2) Act 2015 (enforcement by deduction from accounts) and the

individual is adjudged bankrupt before the end of the period of 3 months beginning with the payment.

- (3A) Where this subsection applies –
- (a) in a case within subsection (3)(a), the goods or effects, or the proceeds of their sale, and
  - (b) in a case within subsection (3)(b), the amount in question,
- is charged for the benefit of the bankrupt’s estate with the preferential debts of the bankrupt to the extent that the bankrupt’s estate is for the time being insufficient for meeting them.”;
- (b) in subsection (4), for “(3)” substitute “(3A)”.
- (2) In paragraph 40(3) of Schedule 19 to the Enterprise and Regulatory Reform Act 2013 (which amends section 347(3) of the Insolvency Act 1986 to substitute “made” for “adjudged”), the reference to subsection (3) of section 347 is to be read as a reference to the version of subsection (3) substituted by sub-paragraph (1) of this paragraph.

*Insolvency (Northern Ireland) Order 1989*

- 33 The Insolvency (Northern Ireland) Order 1989 (S.I. 1989/2405 (N.I. 19) is amended as follows. 20
- 34 In Article 106 (power to stay or restrain proceedings against company), after paragraph (2) insert –
- “(3) Paragraph (1) applies in relation to any action being taken in respect of the company under Part 1 of Schedule 8 to the Finance (No. 2) Act 2015 (enforcement by deduction from accounts) as it applies in relation to any action or proceeding mentioned in sub-paragraph (b) of that paragraph.” 25
- 35 In Article 108 (avoidance of sequestration or distress) –
- (a) the existing text becomes paragraph (1), and
  - (b) after that paragraph insert – 30
- “(2) In paragraph (1) the reference to “sequestration or distress” includes a hold notice or a deduction notice under Part 1 of Schedule 8 to the Finance (No. 2) Act 2015 (enforcement by deduction from accounts) and, if paragraph (1) has effect in relation to a deduction notice, it also has effect in relation to the hold notice to which it relates (whenever the hold notice was given).” 35
- 36 In Article 110 (consequences of winding-up order), after paragraph (3) insert –
- “(3A) In paragraphs (2) and (3), the reference to an action or proceeding includes action in respect of the company under Part 1 of Schedule 8 to the Finance (No. 2) Act 2015 (enforcement by deduction from accounts).” 40
- 37 (1) Article 150 (preferential charge on goods distrained) is amended as follows.

- (2) For paragraph (2) substitute –
- “(2) Paragraph (2A) applies where –
- (a) any person has distrained upon the goods or effects of the company, or
  - (b) Her Majesty’s Revenue and Customs has been paid any amount from an account of the company under Part 1 of Schedule 8 to the Finance (No. 2) Act 2015 (enforcement by deduction from accounts),
- within the 3 months immediately preceding the date of the winding-up order.
- (2A) Where this paragraph applies –
- (a) in a case within paragraph (2)(a), the goods or effects, or the proceeds of their sale, and
  - (b) in a case within paragraph (2)(b), the amount in question, is charged for the benefit of the company with the preferential debts of the company to the extent that the company’s property is for the time being insufficient for meeting those debts.”
- (3) In paragraph (3) for “(2)” substitute “(2A)”.
- (4) Accordingly, in the heading for the Article after “distrained” insert “, etc”.
- 38 (1) Article 301 (preferential charge on goods distrained) is amended as follows. 20
- (2) For paragraph (1) substitute –
- “(1) Paragraph (1A) applies where –
- (a) any person has distrained upon the goods or effects of an individual who is adjudged bankrupt within 3 months from the distraint, or
  - (b) Her Majesty’s Revenue and Customs has been paid any amount from an account of an individual under Part 1 of Schedule 8 to the Finance (No. 2) Act 2015 (enforcement by deduction from accounts) and the individual is adjudged bankrupt within 3 months from the payment.
- (1A) Where this paragraph applies –
- (a) in a case within paragraph (1)(a), the goods or effects, or the proceeds of their sale, and
  - (b) in a case within paragraph (1)(b), the amount in question, is charged for the benefit of the bankrupt’s estate with the preferential debts of the bankrupt to the extent that the bankrupt’s estate is for the time being insufficient for meeting them.”
- (3) In paragraph (2) for “(1)” substitute “(1A)”.
- FA 1998
- 39 In Schedule 18 to FA 1998 (company tax returns, assessments etc), in paragraph 40, after sub-paragraph (4) insert – 40
- “(5) Where –
- (a) action is being taken under Part 1 of Schedule 8 to the Finance (No. 2) Act 2015 (enforcement of deduction from

	accounts) for the recovery of an amount (“the original amount”) of any tax charged by a determination under paragraph 36 or 37, and	
	(b) before that action is concluded, the determination is superseded by a self-assessment,	5
	that action may be continued as if it were action for the purposes of the recovery of so much of the tax charged by the self-assessment as is due and payable, has not been paid and does not exceed the original amount.”	
<i>FA 2003</i>		<i>10</i>
40	In Schedule 10 to FA 2003 (stamp duty land tax: returns etc), in paragraph 27, after sub-paragraph (3) insert—	
	“(4) Where—	
	(a) action is being taken under Part 1 of Schedule 8 to the Finance (No. 2) Act 2015 (enforcement of deduction from accounts) for the recovery of an amount (“the original amount”) of tax charged by a Revenue determination, and	15
	(b) before that action is concluded, the determination is superseded by a self-assessment,	
	that action may be continued as if it were action for the purposes of the recovery of so much of the tax charged by the self-assessment as is due and payable, has not yet been paid and does not exceed the original amount.”	20
<i>FA 2013</i>		
41	In Schedule 33 to FA 2013 (annual tax on enveloped dwellings: returns etc), in paragraph 20, after sub-paragraph (3) insert—	25
	“(4) Where—	
	(a) action is being taken under Part 1 of Schedule 8 to the Finance (No. 2) Act 2015 (enforcement of deduction from accounts) for the recovery of an amount (“the original amount”) of tax charged by an HMRC determination, and	30
	(b) before that action is concluded, the determination is superseded by a self-assessment,	
	that action may be continued as if it were action for the purposes of the recovery of so much of the tax charged by the self-assessment as is due and payable, has not yet been paid and does not exceed the original amount.”	35

# Finance Bill

---

---

A

# B I L L

To grant certain duties, to alter other duties, and to amend the law relating to the National Debt and the Public Revenue, and to make further provision in connection with finance.

*Ordered to be brought in by  
the Chairman of Ways and Means,  
the Prime Minister,  
Mr Chancellor of the Exchequer,  
Secretary Iain Duncan Smith,  
Secretary Sajid Javid, Secretary Greg Clark,  
Greg Hands, Mr David Gauke, Damian Hinds  
and Harriett Baldwin*

---

*Ordered, by The House of Commons,  
to be Printed, 14 July 2015.*

---

© Parliamentary copyright House of Commons 2015

*This publication may be reproduced under the terms of the Open Parliament Licence, which is published at  
[www.parliament.uk/site-information/copyright](http://www.parliament.uk/site-information/copyright)*

PUBLISHED BY AUTHORITY OF THE HOUSE OF COMMONS  
LONDON – THE STATIONERY OFFICE LIMITED  
Printed in the United Kingdom by The Stationery Office Limited  
£x.xx